



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

CLASSICAL SCHOOL BOOKS.

ES et HEROES; or, Kings and Heroes of Greece and the East: a Selection of Tales from **HERODOTUS**, with English Notes. By the Rev. E. ST. JOHN PARRY, M.A. Head Master of Leamington College. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ORIGINES ROMANÆ; or, Tales of Early Rome: selected from the first Five Books of **LIVY**, with English Notes. By the Rev. E. ST. JOHN PARRY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s.

The **WORKS** of **VIRGIL**, chiefly from the Text of Wagner; with brief Latin Foot-Notes, a Virgilian Syntax, and English Notes. By the Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 12mo. *just ready*.

The **TALE** of the **GREAT PERSIAN WAR**, from the Histories of **HERODOTUS**. By the Rev. G. W. COX, M.A. late Scholar of Trinity College, Oxford. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

TALES from **GREEK MYTHOLOGY**. By the Rev. GEORGE W. COX, M.A. Square 16mo. 3s. 6d.

TALES of the **GODS** and **HEROES**. By the Rev. GEORGE W. COX, M.A. Fcp. 8vo. 5s.

TALES of **THEBES** and **ARGOS**: being the **SECOND SERIES** of *Tales of the Gods and Heroes*, completing the work. By the Rev. G. W. COX, M.A. Fcp. 8vo. *just ready*.

BECKER'S CHARICLES: Illustrations of the Private Life of the Ancient Greeks; with Notes and Excursuses. Post 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A **FIRST HISTORY** of **GREECE**. By **ELIZABETH M. SEWELL**, Author of *Amy Herbert*. Fcp. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

HISTORY of **GREECE**, from the Earliest Times to the Destruction of Corinth by the Romans, B.C. 146. By Dr. L. SCHMITZ. With Supplementary Chapters on Religion, Literature, Arts, &c. by C. K. WATSON, M.A. 12mo. 7s. 6d.

The **CHILD'S FIRST HISTORY** of **ROME**. By **ELIZABETH M. SEWELL**, Author of *Amy Herbert*. Fcp. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

The **FALL** of the **ROMAN REPUBLIC**: a Short History of the last Century of the Commonwealth. By the Rev. CHARLES MERIVALE, B.D. 12mo. 7s. 6d.

ANCIENT HISTORY of **EGYPT**, **ASSYRIA**, and **BABYLONIA**. By **ELIZABETH M. SEWELL**, Author of *Amy Herbert*. Fcp. 8vo. 6s.

London: **LONGMAN, GREEN, and CO.** Paternoster Row.

A SMALLER
LATIN GRAMMAR.

LONDON
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.
NEW-STREET SQUARE

A SMALLER
LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY

THE REV. EDWARD MILLER, M.A.

**LATE FELLOW AND TUTOR OF NEW COLLEGE, OXFORD:
AUTHOR OF 'AN ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.'**

LONDON:

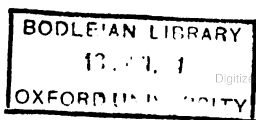
LONGMAN, GREEN, LONGMAN, ROBERTS, & GREEN.

1864.

3058.

c

Digitized by Google



PREFACE.

THIS SMALLER GRAMMAR is part of my original design, and is the more called for from the unexpected length to which it became necessary to extend my 'Elementary Latin Grammar,' in order to embrace with full enough explanation the matter required in a School for sound Latin scholarship.

It includes therefore,—

1. An abridged Accidence, all the prominent parts being retained in large print, with the other matter in smaller type, and some more information in foot-notes to be learnt or not according to circumstances. The memorial lines have been shortened as far as seemed practicable; lists of exceptions have been cut down so as to contain only the words in ordinary use; while the Declensions and Conjugations have been slightly enlarged.

2. The First Syntax has been given entire from the original work, with a few little corrections and improvements; and a selection of Additional Rules has been appended, chiefly from the 'Second Syntax,' for early reference or to be learnt by heart.

3. The Prosody, with a few omissions, has been added far enough to teach Hexameters and Pentameters.

4. And besides Translations of the Latin Rules and Examples, which by the advice of some experienced masters have been kept distinct from the passages translated, there is a small Appendix containing from the 'Elementary Grammar' a list of Prepositions with their central meanings.

For the most advantageous use of this Grammar, the Master or Tutor should be provided with the larger one to which it is introductory. Thus boys can be helped by oral explanation, where more in print would have added to the bulk of the book

and hindered its free use by beginners. And the purpose of some of the arrangements will be made more evident; as, for example, those who were not acquainted with the difficulty boys find in the most ordinary structure of compound sentences, or did not know the whole theory as unfolded there, might be inclined to question the usefulness of some of the Second Part of the Syntax: whilst, on the contrary, both the Second and First Parts should be viewed as preparatory to the longer or Second Syntax, and should be taught upon its acquaintance. I have, therefore, retained in a few cases the references to the Second Syntax.

It would be difficult to say how much of this Grammar should be learnt by heart. The Declensions and Conjugations cannot of course be too accurately known; and the memorial lines and Latin Rules should also be committed to memory; though as an explanation in English always precedes the Latin formula, the Grammar itself affords the widest discretion in this respect. The most important parts of the Accidence have been expressed tersely and rhythmically where possible, in order that they may be learnt by heart if necessary, according to the judgement of the Teacher.

The list of exceptions to the ordinary formation of Perfects and Supines, being intended to train the ear to these forms, should be taught gradually. A small portion might be learnt with each construing lesson, till the whole is thoroughly known.

I have again the pleasure of offering my thanks to numerous kind friends for hints and encouragement. But for the reception given to my 'Elementary Latin Grammar,' I should not have ventured on this publication.

DURDHAM DOWN:

January 5, 1864.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

LATIN GRAMMAR AND LANGUAGE.

	PAGE
Letters	1
Syllables	2
Quantity and Accents	2
Divisions of Latin Grammar	2

PART I.

ACCIDENCE, OR OF SINGLE WORDS.

CHAPTER I.

PARTS OF SPEECH	3
---------------------------	---

CHAPTER II.

NOUNS.

Numbers	4
Cases	5
Genders. General Rules	6

CHAPTER III.

NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Declensions	8
First Declension	8
Second Declension	9
1. Masculines in -us	10
2. Masculines in -er	10
3. Neuters in -um	11
Genders	12
Third Declension	13
I. Parisyllables	13
Exceptions in -is	14

	PAGE
II. Imparissyllables	15
Formation of the Genitive	16
Genitive Plural	17
Greek Nouns	18
Genders	19
Fourth Declension	21
Genders	23
Fifth Declension	23
Genders	23
Concluding Remarks on Substantives	24

CHAPTER IV.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Declension	25
Adjectives of Three Terminations	26
„ „ Two Terminations	29
„ „ One Termination	30
Ablatives in <i>I</i> and <i>E</i>	31
Irregular Adjectives	32
Numerals	32
Comparison	34

CHAPTER V.

PRONOUNS.

Classes of Pronouns	36
I. Personal	36
II. Demonstrative or Distinctive	37
III. Relative	39
IV. Interrogative	40
V. Indefinite	40
VI. Possessive	41
VII. Negative	42

CHAPTER VI.

VERBS.

Kinds of Verbs	42
Moods	44
Tenses	44
Declension of Infinitive—Gerunds and Supines	46
Participles	47
The Four Conjugations	47
Verb <i>Sum</i>	50
Conjugation of Verbs—Active Voice	52
Passive Voice	60
Observations on the Conjugations	69
I. Verbs in <i>IO</i>	69
II. Variations in Form	69
III. Periphrastic Conjugation	70
IV. Peculiarities of the Tenses	71

	PAGE
Formation of Perfects and Supines	73
I. First or <i>A</i> Conjugation	73
II. Second or <i>E</i> Conjugation	74
III. Third or Consonantal Conjugation	76
IV. Fourth or <i>I</i> Conjugation	83
Deponent Verbs	84
Irregular Verbs	87
Defective Verbs	93
Impersonal Verbs	94
I. Active	94
II. Passive	95
Concluding Remarks on Verbs—Derived Verbs—Similar Verbs	96

CHAPTER VII.

PARTICLES OR UNDECLINED PARTS OF SPEECH.

Prepositions	98
Governing Accusative	98
" Ablative	99
" Both Cases	99
Words Compounded with Prepositions	
I. Changes of Prepositions in Composition	100
II. " " Verbs " "	101
Adverbs	103
I. Formation	103
II. Comparison	104
III. Kinds of Adverbs. 1. Pure	105
2. Conjunctive	106
Conjunctions—Ten Classes	107
Interjections	109

PART II.

FIRST SYNTAX,

OR CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

THE ELEMENTS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Parts of a Simple Sentence	110
I. Subject and Predication	111
II. Subject	111
1. Single Noun	111
2. Combination of Substantives	112

	PAGE
3. Adjective and Substantive	114
Adjective governing (1.) Genitive	115
(2.) Dative	116
(3.) Accusative	116
(4.) Ablative	116
(5.) Case with Preposition	117
Participle governing (6.) a Case	117
III. Predication	117
1. Single Verb (Adverbs)	118
2. Combination of Verbs	118
3. Copulative Verbs	118
4. Transitive Verbs	119
5. Neuter Verbs	120
6. Verb governing Dative	120
7. Verb governing Ablative	122
8. Verb governing Case with Preposition	122
9. Names of Places	123
10. Time	124
11. Conjunctions	124

CHAPTER II.

VARIATIONS IN CONSTRUCTION.

1. Passive Verb	125
2. Impersonals	125
3. Vocative Case	126
4. Interrogative Sentences	126
5. Ablative Absolute	127

CHAPTER III.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. Simple and Compound Sentences	129
II. The five kinds of Clauses	129
III. Sequence of Tenses	131
IV. Conjunctional Clauses	132
V. Relative Clauses	133
VI. Indirect Interrogations	135
VII. Infinitive Clauses	135

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

RULES FOR CONSTRUING

Simple Sentences	137
Compound Sentences	138

RULES FOR PARSING	139
-----------------------------	-----

ADDITIONAL RULES OF SYNTAX	141
--------------------------------------	-----

PART III.

PROSODY, OR THE STRUCTURE OF VERSES.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	146

CHAPTER I

QUANTITY.

The Five General Rules	147
Quantity of Final Syllables	149
Monosyllables	149
Polysyllables ending in a Vowel	149
Consonant	151
Quantity of "First and "Middle Syllables	153

CHAPTER II.

METRE.

Hexameters	.	.	.	.	.	.	154
Pentameters	.	.	.	.	.	.	155
Figures of Scanning	.	.	.	.	.	.	156
Elision	.	.	.	.	.	.	156
Cæsura	.	.	.	.	.	.	157
Poetical Licenses	.	.	.	.	.	.	157
Heroic and Elegiac Verse	.	.	.	.	.	.	158

TRANSLATION OF LATIN RULES AND EXAMPLES.

In Accidence	.	.	.	.	.	.	160
In Syntax	.	.	.	.	.	.	163
In Additional Rules	.	.	.	.	.	.	171

APPENDIX.

Central Meanings of Prepositions 173

A SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. GRAMMAR teaches the rules of speech, whether pronounced or written; and Latin Grammar teaches the rules of the Latin speech or language, which was spoken and written by the ancient Romans.

The Latin language derived its name from the district of Latium, near Rome.

The Parts of Speech are Words: words consist of Syllables; and syllables of Letters.

§ 2. There are twenty-five Latin letters, which are the same as the English letters without *W*.

Q always has *u* after it, as in English, besides the vowel of the syllable: as, *qui, quæ, quod*. So occasionally *G*: as, *anguis*.

Of these letters, six are named Vowels—*a, e, i, o, u, y*.

The rest are called Consonants.

A Vowel* makes a full sound of itself: as, *e*.

A Consonant† cannot be sounded without a vowel: as, *b (e)*.

The Vowels are either *pure Vowels*, viz. *a, e, o*; or *Half-vowels*, viz. *i, u*, and *y*. *I* and *u* are often interchanged with the half-consonants *j* and *v*.

Consonants are divided into Half-consonants, Liquids, Mutes, and Double Letters.

* *Vocalis*, self-sounding.

† *Consonans*, sounding with.

The Half-consonants are *j, v, s*; the Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*; the Double Letters are *x, z*; and the remaining nine are Mutes.†

The Mutes are divided thus:—

	(Tenues)	(Mediæ)	(Aspirates)
Labial (lip-sounds) . .	P	B	F (ph)
Dental (teeth-sounds) . .	T	D	
Guttural (throat-sounds)	CK Q	G	H.

X is made up of *cs*, or *gs*: *z* of *ds, ts*, or *ss*.

§ 3. A syllable consists of one or more letters pronounced in one sound. Of these letters one at least must be a vowel.

The union of two vowels to express one sound is called a Diphthong.‡

There are six Diphthongs,—*ae, oe*, and *au*, which are often used; and *ei, eu*, and *ui*, which are seldom used.

Ae and *oe* are pronounced as *e*, and are often joined (*æ, œ*). When the letters that make a Diphthong belong to two syllables, they are usually marked with two points: as, *Aër, Typhoëus*.

§ 4. Every syllable is short (◡) or long (—), according as its vowel is short or long; or else common (◡◡).

A vowel may be—

1. Short by nature: as, *bŏnă*.
2. Long by nature: as, *ŭnī*.
3. Short by position before another vowel: as, *dies*.
4. Long by position before two consonants, or a double consonant: as, *cōnjūx*.

Diphthongs are always long: as, *pānā*.

Every word has one Accent, which marks the syllable on which the *stress* is laid.

1. If the last syllable but one is long, it has the accent: as, *régnum, amábat, monéret*.
2. If the last syllable but one is short, the accent is generally on the syllable before: as, *flúmina, amáverat, réxerant*.

§ 5. Latin Grammar is divided into three parts; of which Accidence§ treats of single words, Syntax of the combination of words in sentences, and Prosody of the structure of verses.

* *Liquidus*. flowing smoothly, as, *flumíneus, moríturus, volúcris*.

† *Mutus*, close-sounding.

‡ *δίφθογγος*.

§ *Ἀκκιδένσις*.

PART I.

ACCIDENCE, OR OF SINGLE WORDS.

CHAPTER I.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 6. THERE are three kinds of Words, or Parts of Speech, viz. *Nouns with Pronouns, Verbs, and Particles.*

I. Nouns* are either—

1. Names of Persons or Things, which are called Nouns Substantive:† as, *Cæsār*, Cæsar, and *mēnsă*, a table; or,
2. Names of Qualities, which are called Nouns Adjective:‡ as, *bōnūs*, good; *fēlix*, happy.
3. Pronouns§ are used instead of nouns, to prevent repetition: as, *Ēgő*, I; *tū*, thou; *is*, he; *idem*, the same.

Names of persons and places are called Proper Names: as, *Virgilīus*, Virgil; *Rōmă*, Rome. Other substantives are called Common Nouns, or appellatives: as, *rōsă*, a rose.

A noun substantive expresses by itself its own meaning, without the addition of another word: as, *libēr*, a book.

A noun adjective must be joined to a substantive: as, *bōnūs libēr*, a good book.

* *Nōmīnă.*

† *Nōmīnă Sūbstāntīvă.*

‡ *Nōmīnă Sūbstāntīvă.*

§ *Prō-nōmīnă.* Google

II. Verbs* express what persons and things do, are done to, or are: as, *māter āmāt*, the mother loves; *pŭēr āmātŭr*, the boy is loved; *mēnsā ēst bōnā*, the table is good.

The infinitives of verbs, with the gerunds and supines, are used as substantives, and the participles as adjectives.

III. Particles† are of four kinds:—

1. Prepositions,‡ which are put before nouns: as, *ād dēxtram*, to the right hand; *pēr Ītāliam*, through Italy.
2. Adverbs,§ which are joined to verbs and adjectives, to qualify their signification: as, *bēnē rēgīt*, he rules well; *mŭltō faciļiōr*, much easier.
3. Conjunctions,|| which link words, clauses, and sentences together: as, *pātēr ēt māter*, the father and the mother; *pātēr rēgīt, māterquē āmāt*, the father rules, and the mother loves; *vōcŭm gēnērā sŭnt triā*; *sēd pārtēs ōrātiōnis ōctō sŭnt*, the kinds of words are three; but the parts of speech are eight.
4. Interjections,¶ or words of exclamation, which are most commonly *thrown into* the middle of sentences, without interfering with their construction: as, *Heū!* alas! *ēccē!* behold!

Therefore the Parts of Speech are eight:—

Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, declined:

Preposition, Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection, undeclined.

* *Verbā.*

† *Adverbā.*

‡ *Pŕæpōsitiōnēs.*

|| *Cōnjunctiōnēs.*

‡ *Pŕæpōsitiōnēs.*

¶ *Intērjēctiōnēs.*

CHAPTER II.

NOUNS.

§ 7. Nouns Substantive are declined with *Number* and *Case*; and Nouns Adjective with *Number*, *Case*, and *Gender*.

But every Substantive has its own Gender.

There are two Numbers: (1) the Singular,* which speaks of one only: as, *Pătēr*, a father; and (2) the Plural,† which speaks of more than one: as, *Pătrēs*, fathers.

§ 8. CASES.

There are six Cases in each number: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

1. The Nominative Case‡ usually comes before the verb, and answers the question who? or what? as, who teaches? *Măgistēr* dōcēt, *the master teaches*.
2. The Genitive Case§ has the sign of (or 's), and answers the question whose? or whereof? as, whose voice? *Măgistrī* vōx, *the voice of the master, or the master's voice*.
3. The Dative Case|| has the signs to and for, and answers the questions to or for whom? to or for what? as, to whom do I give the book? *Dō* lībrūm *măgistrō*, *I give the book to the master*.
4. The Accusative Case¶ follows the verb, and answers the questions whom? or what? as, whom do I love? *Āmō* *mātrē*, *I love my mother*; or comes before the Infinitive Mood, and has the sign that: as, *sciō* *tē* *vidēre*, *I know that you see*.

* Singulārīs.
§ Genitīvūs.

† Plūrālīs.
|| Dātīvūs.

‡ Nōminātīvūs.
¶ Accūsātīvūs.

5. The Vocative Case* is of one called or spoken to: as, *O mägistër, O master.*
6. The Ablative Case† has the signs *with, in, by, and from, and than* after the comparative degree: as, with what do I speak? *Örë löquör, I speak with my mouth.*

§ 9. GENDERS.

There are three genders—the *Masculine*, for males; the *Feminine*, for females; and the *Neuter*, for things: as, *döminüs*, a lord, *fëminä*, a woman, and *bëllum*, war.

But this is not always so. The general rules are as follows:—

I. Masculines are:—

1. Names of gods and men: as, *Jüpütër, Äpöllö*; *Cäsär*; *pöëtä*, a poet; *tirö*, a recruit.
2. Names of nations: as, *Römānī*, the Romans; *Gālī*, the Gauls; *Äthëntënsës*, the Athenians.
3. Names of winds: as, *Eürüs*, the East wind; *Äquölö*, the North wind; *Aüstër*, the South wind.
4. Names of months: as, *Märtüs*, March; *Jültüs*, *Sëptëmbër*, &c.
5. Names of rivers are generally masculine: as, *Tibris*, the Tiber; *Sëquāna*, the Seine; *Liris*, the Garigliano.
6. Names of mountains: as, *mōns*, a mountain; *Cithærōn* (in Attica), *Äpënninī*.

II. Feminines are:—

1. Names of goddesses and women: as, *Cërës*, *Didö*, *Völümniä*.
2. Most names of countries: as, *rëglö*, a country; *Etrürtä*, *Përsis*, *Läcëdämon*, *Ägyptüs*.
3. Names of islands: as, *insülä*, an island; *Cörsicä*; *Sälämis*; *Lësbös*.
4. Many names of towns: as, *ürbs*, a city; *Römä*; *Tyrüs*; *Cärthägö*.
5. Names of plants: as, *ärbör*, a tree; *läurüs*, a bay; *äbils*, a fir; *säliz*, a willow.

III. Neuters are:—

1. Indeclinable Substantives: as, *fäs*, right; *nīl*, *nīhīl*, nothing; *nëfäs*, wrong.
2. Infinitive Moods, sentences used as substantives, and speeches put substantively. See Syntax, p. 112.

* *Vöcätivüs.*

† *Äblätivüs.*

IV. When a noun* is either masculine or feminine, according to the sex signified, it is called Common: as, *pārēns*, a parent, that is, a father or a mother.

A noun is called *Doubtful*, which has two genders, either of which is used without reference to the sex: as, *ānguī*, a snake, both masculine and feminine.

The following words, most of which relate to *men* and *women*, are Common; but are used as masculine, unless a female is meant.

Adōlescēns, a youth

Bōs, an ox or cow

Civīs, a citizen

Cōmēs, a comrade

Cōnjūx, a spouse

Dūx, a leader

Hōstīs, an enemy

Incōlā, an inhabitant

Infāns, an infant

Jūvēns, a young person

Obsēs, a hostage

Pārēns, a parent

Tēstīs, a witness

Vātēs, a prophet.

Most words relating to animals are Doubtful: as—

Anguī, a snake

Ansēr, a goose

Cānis, a dog

Dāmd, a deer

Sērpēs, a serpent

Sūs, a pig

Tālpā, a mole

Tigrīs, a tiger.

The memorial lines are as follows:—

Mārēs, ūt *Vīri*, *Divī*,
Plēriq̄ Mōntēs, *Rivī*,
Mēnsēs, *Vēntī*, cūm *Pōpūlis*,
Sūnt māsculīnī gēnērīs.

Ēt *Vōx* īndēclīnābīlis,
Neūtriūs sūnt gēnērīs.

Cōntrā, *Divā*, *Fāmīnā*,
Plāntā, *Ūrbēs*, *Insulā*,
Terrārūm cūm vōcābūlis,
Sūnt fēmīnīnī gēnērīs.

Gēnērīs Cōmmūnis sūnt
Quōt ūtrīq̄ sērviūnt
Gēnērī prō sēxū sūo;
Ūt *bōs* tūā cūm *bōvē* tūō:
Sic *Pārēns*, *Infāns*, *Civīs*, *Hōstīs*,
Vātēs, *Adōlescēns*, *Tēstīs*,
Dūx, *Cōnjūx*, *Cōmēs*, *Jūvēns*.
Āt sūnt incērtī gēnērīs
Ēt *Dāmd*, *Tālpā*, *Tigrīs*, *Grūs*,
Ēt *Anguīs*, *Sērpēs*, *Cānis*, *Sūs*.

Vērbūm īn īnfīnītīvō
Pōsītūm prō Sūbstāntīvō,

§ 10. There is no Article in Latin: as, *Cēsār*, Caesar; *mēnsā*, a table; *māgistēr*, the master.

The gender of the substantive is shown by the gender of the adjective agreeing with it.

* A noun that includes both sexes under one gender is called *Epicene*: as, *pāssēr*, a sparrow (masc.); *āguilā*, an eagle (fem.); *hērēs*, an heir (masc.), both male and female. Thus:—

Masculine
Cānicr, a cyab
Cōrvūs, a raven

Feminine
Fēlis, a cat
Rānd, a frog
Vulpēs, a fox.

CHAPTER III

NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 11. THERE are five Declensions in Latin.

Substantives may be divided into two classes: viz.—

1. *Parisyllabic*, or those which have the same number of syllables throughout the singular number: as, *Musa, Dominus, Nubes*.

2. *Imparisyllabic*, or those which increase in the genitive or other cases: as, *Lapis, Gradus, and Facies*.

The Declensions may be distinguished as follows:—

- | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|---|-----------------------|
| 1. The First (<i>Parisyllabic</i>) | is chiefly declined with | . | . | . | <i>a</i> |
| 2. The Second (<i>Parisyllabic</i>) | . | . | . | . | <i>o</i> and <i>u</i> |
| 3. The Third | { <i>Parisyllabic</i>
<i>Imparisyllabic</i> } | . | . | . | <i>i</i> and |
| 4. The Fourth (<i>Imparisyllabic</i>) | . | . | . | . | <i>u</i> |
| 5. The Fifth (<i>Imparisyllabic</i>) | . | . | . | . | <i>ē</i> |

The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of Neuter Nouns are the same, and in the plural end in *ā*.

The Genitive plural of the first two Declensions ends in *-rum*, in the last three in *-um*.

The Dative plural of the first two ends in *-is*, and of the last three in *-bus*.

§ 12. FIRST DECLENSION.

Characteristic vowel *a*.

The Nominative of the First Declension ends in *a*, and is generally of the feminine gender: as, *Rōsā*, a rose.

1. *Feminine.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Rōs-ā,	<i>a rose</i>	N.	Rōs-æ,	<i>roses</i>
G.	Rōs-æ,	<i>of a rose</i>	G.	Rōs-ārum,	<i>of roses</i>
D.	Rōs-æ,	<i>to a rose</i>	D.	Rōs-is,	<i>to roses</i>
Acc.	Rōs-am,	<i>a rose</i>	Acc.	Rōs-ēs,	<i>roses</i>
V.	Rōs-ā,	<i>O rose</i>	V.	Rōs-æ,	<i>O roses</i>
Abl.	Rōs-â,	<i>with a rose</i>	Abl.	Rōs-is,	<i>with roses.</i>

2. But words pertaining to men are Masculine : as,

N.	Naūt-ā,	a sailor	N.	Naūt-æ,	sailors
G.	Naūt-æ,	of a sailor	G.	Naūt-ārum,	of sailors
D.	Naūt-æ,	to a sailor	D.	Naūt-is,	to sailors
Acc.	Naūt-am,	a sailor	Acc.	Naūt-ās,	sailors
V.	Naūt-ā,	O sailor	V.	Naūt-æ,	O sailors
Abl.	Naūt-ā,	with a sailor	Abl.	Naūt-is,	with sailors.

Examples for declining :—

Feminine.

Cūră, care
Flāmmă, a flame
Mēnsă, a table
Mūsă, a muse
Pŭellă, a girl
Silvă, a wood.

Masculine.

Aūrīgă, a charioteer
Pōētă, a poet
Sēquănă, the Seine.

Some words derived from Greek, in *as* and *es* of the masculine gender, and *e* of the feminine, belong to this declension.

1. *Masculine.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N.	Ānēās	Ānchisēs
G.	Ānēæ	Ānchisæ
D.	Ānēæ	Ānchisæ
Acc.	Ānēān	Ānchisēn
V.	Ānēā	Ānchisē (ā or ā)
Abl.	Ānēā.	Ānchisā.

2. *Feminine.*

<i>Sing.</i>
Pēnēlōpē
Pēnēlōpēs
Pēnēlōpæ
Pēnēlōpēn
Pēnēlōpē
Pēnēlōpē.

Obs. The genitive plural was sometimes contracted into *ūm* : as, *drāchmūn*, *cælicolūm*.

§ 13. SECOND DECLENSION.

Characteristic vowels *o* and *u*.

The Nominative Singular of the second declension ends in *ūs* and *ēr* of the Masculine Gender, and *um* of the Neuter : as, *dōmīnūs*, a lord, and *māgīstēr*, a master (masc.), and *rēgnum*, a kingdom (neut.).

1. Masculines in *-us*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N.	Dōmīn-ūs,	<i>a lord</i>	N.	Dōmīn-ī,	<i>lords</i>
G.	Dōmīn-ī,	<i>of a lord</i>	G.	Dōmīn-ōrum,	<i>of lords</i>
D.	Dōmīn-ō,	<i>to a lord</i>	D.	Dōmīn-is,	<i>to lords</i>
Acc.	Dōmīn-um,	<i>a lord</i>	Acc.	Dōmīn-ōs,	<i>lords</i>
V.	Dōmīn-ē,	<i>O lord</i>	V.	Dōmīn-ī,	<i>O lords</i>
Abl.	Dōmīn-ō,	<i>from a lord</i>	Abl.	Dōmīn-is,	<i>from lords.</i>

Masculines.

So	<i>Ānimūs</i> , the mind	<i>Ōcūlūs</i> , an eye
	<i>Ānnūs</i> , a year	<i>Rāmūs</i> , a branch
	<i>Cāmpūs</i> , a plain	<i>Vēntūs</i> , the wind.

Feminines (trees).

<i>Cūprēssūs</i> , a cypress.	<i>Frāxinūs</i> , an ash.	<i>Ūlmūs</i> , an elm.
-------------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

Obs. 1. Words in *ūs*, chiefly Proper Names, were thus declined:—

N. Mērcūrīūs	Acc. Mērcūrīum
G. Mērcūrīī, -rī	V. Mērcūrī
D. Mērcūrīō	Abl. Mērcūrīō

So also—

<i>Cāiūs</i>	<i>Pōmpēiūs</i>
<i>Dēmētriūs</i>	<i>Virgīliūs</i>
<i>Filiūs</i> , a son	&c. &c.
<i>Gēniūs</i> , a guardian spirit	

Obs. 2. *Deus* was thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Dēūs	N. Dī (seldom Dēī or Dīī)
G. Dēī	G. Dēūm or Dēōrum
D. Dēō	D. Dīs (seldom Dēīs or Dīīs)
Acc. Dēum	Acc. Dēōs
V. Dēūs	V. Dī (seldom Dīī)
Abl. Dēō	Abl. Dīs (seldom Dēīs or Dīīs).

2. Masculines in *-er*.

A. With *E* thrown out in the oblique cases.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Māgīst-ēr, <i>a māster</i>	N.	Māgīst-rī, <i>masters</i>
G.	Māgīst-rī, <i>of a master</i>	G.	Māgīst-rōrum, <i>of masters</i>

D. Măgist-rō, to a master	D. Măgist-rīs, to masters
A. Măgist-rum, a master	A. Măgist-rōs, masters
V. Măgist-ēr, O master	V. Măgist-rī, O masters
Ab. Măgist-rō, from a master	Ab. Măgist-rīs, from masters.
So <i>Ăgēr</i> , a field	<i>Cōlūbēr</i> , a snake
<i>Ăpēr</i> , a boar	<i>Libēr</i> , a book
<i>Căpēr</i> , a he-goat	<i>Vīr</i> , a man : see below.

B. With *E* preserved throughout.

Singular.

Plural.

N. Pūēr, a boy	N. Pūēr-ī, boys
G. Pūēr-ī, of a boy	G. Pūēr-ōrum, of boys
D. Pūēr-ō, to a boy	D. Pūēr-īs, to boys
A. Pūēr-um, a boy	A. Pūēr-ōs, boys
V. Pūēr, O boy	V. Pūēr-ī, O boys
Ab. Pūēr-ō, from a boy	Ab. Pūēr-īs, from boys.

Obs. The following words are declined like *Pūēr*:—

Ādultēr, an adulterer

Libēr, Bacchus.

Cēltībēr, ēri, a Celtiberian

Libēri, children (plural)

Gēnēr, a son-in-law

Prēsbytēr, an elder

Ībēr, ēri, an Iberian

Sōcēr, a father-in-law.

Also *Vēspēr*, evening, which is also of the third declension, and words compounded of *yērō* and *fērō*: as, *signīfēr*, a standard-bearer, and *ārmīgēr*, an armour-bearer. So also *vīr*, a man, makes *vīri, vīrō, &c.*, with its compounds *trīūmvīr, &c.* (See § 19, p. 28.)

Pūērūm sēquuntūr hī;—

Cūm adjectivīs tēnēr, āspēr,

Ādultēr, Libēr, libēri,

Ēt mīser, lācēr, libēr, prōspēr,

Sic sōcēr, gēnēr, prēsbytēr,

Ēt quā fērō gērōquē dānt

Et vēspēr, Ībēr, Cēltībēr;

Cōmpōstā, sē sic cōnjūgānt.

3. Neuters in *-um*.

Singular.

Plural.

N. Rēgn-um, a kingdom	N. Rēgn-ā, kingdoms
G. Rēgn-ī, of a kingdom	G. Rēgn-ōrum, of kingdoms
D. Rēgn-ō, to a kingdom	D. Rēgn-īs, to kingdoms
A. Rēgn-um, a kingdom	A. Rēgn-ā, kingdoms
V. Rēgn-um, O kingdom	V. Rēgn-ā, O kingdoms
Ab. Rēgn-ō, with a kingdom	Ab. Rēgn-īs, with kingdoms.

So *Bellum*, war
Dōnum, a gift
Præmĭum, a reward

Prātum, a meadow
Vĕrbum, a word
Vincŭlum, a chain.

Obs. 1. The genitive singular of words in *ium* was sometimes contracted into *i*: as, *ingĕnti*, *cōnstĭti*. See above. And the genitive plural of this declension sometimes ended in *um* for *orum*: as, *nummum*, *virum*, *divum*.

Obs. 2. Some words in *us*, *os*, *eus*, *us*, and *on*, belong to the second declension: but words in *eus* and *os* have some forms belonging to the third.

N.	Dēlōs	N.	Pānthūs	N.	Ōrpheūs
G.	Dēlī	G.	Pānthī	G.	Ōrphēī -eī (-ēds).
D.	Dēlō	D.	Pānthō	D.	Ōrphēō (-ēī. eī)
A.	Dēlōn	A.	Pānthum	A.	Ōrphēum (-ēā)
V.	Dēlē	V.	Pānthū	V.	Ōrpheū
Ab.	Dēlō	Ab.	Pānthō	Ab.	Ōrphēō.

N.V.	Āndrōgēōs	N.A.V.	Cōlōn
G.	Āndrōgēī (-ō)	G.	Cōlī
D.Ab.	Āndrōgēō	D.Ab.	Cōlō.
A.	Āndrōgēōn (-ō, -ōnā).		

Obs. 3. The following six words in *us* are feminine:—

<i>Ālvūs</i> , a paunch	<i>Hūmūs</i> , the ground
<i>Cōlūs</i> , a distaff	<i>Vānnūs</i> , a fan
<i>Dōmūs</i> , a house	<i>Cārbāsūs</i> , canvass.

Names of trees in *us* are feminine: as, *laūrūs*, a laurel, by the general rule.

These three are neuter:—

Virūs, poison: *pĕlāgūs*, the sea; *vulgūs*, the common people: but *vulgus* is sometimes masculine.

Us ēt *er* sūnt māscŭlīnā:
 Pāucā vērō fēmīnīnā
 Sūnt īn ūs; ūt *ālvūs*, *dōmūs*,
Cārbāsūs, ēt *cōlūs*, *hūmūs*,
Vānnūs, ēt quōt gēnērālīs
 Lēgis pārēnt rēgŭlīs.

Sūnt neŭtrā *um*, ēt hāc īn ūs:—
Virūs, *vulgūs*, *pĕlāgūs*:
 Sēd *vulgūs* quōquē māscŭlūs.

Obs. 4. Neuters in *us* make the Accusative and Vocative singular in *us*, according to the general rule (cf. § 11, p. 8). They have no plural.

§ 14. THIRD DECLENSION.

Characteristic vowels *i* and *ē*.

The third declension has several endings in the nominative, but always makes the genitive singular end in *is*. Nouns of the third declension are of two kinds, viz.—

1. *Parisyllables*, or those which have the same number of syllables throughout the singular number, and

2. *Imparisyllables*, or those which increase in the genitive and other cases.

I. Parisyllables.

1. Feminines in *-es*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Nūb-ēs, a cloud	N.	Nūb-ēs, clouds
G.	Nūb-īs, of a cloud	G.	Nūb-īum, of clouds
D.	Nūb-ī, to a cloud	D.	Nūb-ībūs, to clouds
A.	Nūb-em, a cloud	A.	Nūb-ēs, clouds
V.	Nūb-ēs, O cloud	V.	Nūb-ēs, O clouds
Ab.	Nūb-ē, with a cloud	Ab.	Nūb-ībūs, with clouds.

So *Cādēs*, slaughter

Fīdēs, a lute

Lābēs, a stain

Rūpēs, a rock

Sēdēs, a seat

Vūlpēs, a fox.

2. Masculines and Feminines in *-is*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Cīv-īs, a citizen	N.	Cīv-ēs, citizens
G.	Cīv-īs, of a citizen	G.	Cīv-īum, of citizens
D.	Cīv-ī, to a citizen	D.	Cīv-ībūs, to citizens
A.	Cīv-em, a citizen	A.	Cīv-ēs, citizens
V.	Cīv-īs, O citizen	V.	Cīv-ēs, O citizens
Ab.	Cīv-ē, from a citizen	Ab.	Cīv-ībūs, from citizens.

Feminine.

So *Clāssis*, a fleet

Ōvis, a sheep

Vāllis, a valley

Masculine.

Cōllis, a hill

Ignis, fire

Mēnsis, a month.

3. Neuters in -e.

Singular.

N. Mār-ē,	the sea
G. Mār-is,	of the sea
D. Mār-i,	to the sea
A. Mār-ē,	the sea
V. Mār-ē,	O sea
Ab. Mār-i,	with the sea

Plural.

N. Mār-iā,	the seas
G. Mār-ium,	of the seas
D. Mār-ibūs,	to the seas
A. Mār-iā,	the seas
V. Mār-iā,	O seas
Ab. Mār-ibūs,	with the seas.

So *Altārē*, an altar
Cūbīlē, a bed
Ōvilē, a sheepfold

Præsēpē, a stall
Rētē, a net
Sēdīlē, a bench.

Exceptions in *is*.

Tūssis, a cough, and others, make *im* in the Accusative Singular, and *i* in the Ablative.

N. Tūss-is	A. Tūss-im	N. Tūssēs	A. Tūss-ēs
G. Tūss-is	V. Tūss-is	G. Tūss-ium	V. Tūss-ēs
D. Tūss-i	Ab. Tūss-i	D. Tūss-ibūs	Ab. Tūss-ibūs.

So also—

Cānnābīs, hemp
Chārybdīs, a whirlpool near Mes-
sana

Sēcūris, an axe
Sītīs, thirst

Cūcūmīs, a cucumber, which makes
also *cūcūmērīs*

Vīs, strength, which makes *virēs*
in the plural.

And rivers ending in *is*: as, *Liris*, the Garigliano; *Tībris* or *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Āthēsts*, the Adige, &c.

The following words are declined with *em* and *im*, and *ē* and *i*, both like *tūssis* and *civis*:—

Clāvis, a key
Fēbris, fever
Nāvis, a ship
Pūppis, a stern

Rēstīs, a rope
Tūrris, a tower
Sēmētīs, sowing.*

Tūssim in Accūsātīvō
Sēquuntūr hēc, ēt Ablātīvō;
Sēcūris, *sītīs*, *cūcūmīs*,
Chārybdīs, *vis*, ēt *cānnābīs*;
Et flūvī, quōs claudīt *is*,

Ūt Liris, *Tībris*, *Āthēsts*:
Āt em vel *im*, et *ē* vel *i*
Adsciscunt mōrē mōbīlī
Sēmētīs, *rēstīs*, *pūppis*, *nāvis*,
Fēbris, *tūrris*, *atque* *clāvis*.

* The Ablative in *i* is also used with other words, besides the form in *e*.

Thus, *Amni*,
Avi,
Civi,

Clāssi,
Fūsti,
Igni,

Orbi,
Ungui,
q̄c.

II. Imparisyllables.

1. Masculines increasing short.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Lāpīs,	<i>a stone</i>	N. Lāpīd-ēs,	<i>stones</i>
G. Lāpīd-īs,	<i>of a stone</i>	G. Lāpīd-um,	<i>of stones</i>
D. Lāpīd-ī,	<i>to a stone</i>	D. Lāpīd-ībūs,	<i>to stones</i>
A. Lāpīd-em,	<i>a stone</i>	A. Lāpīd-ēs,	<i>stones</i>
V. Lāpīs,	<i>O stone</i>	V. Lāpīd-ēs,	<i>O stones</i>
Ab. Lāpīd-ē,	<i>with a stone</i>	Ab. Lāpīd-ībūs,	<i>with stones.</i>
So Cārcēr (a gaol), cārcērīs		Pāter (a father), pātrīs	
Hōmō (a man), hōmīnīs		Sānguīs (blood), sānguīnīs.	

So also other masculines—

Āmōr (love), āmōrīs	Rēx (a king), rēgīs
Lābōr (labour), lābōrīs	Sērmō (a discourse), sērmōnīs.

2. Feminines increasing long.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Vīrtūs,	<i>virtue</i>	N. Vīrtūt-ēs,	<i>virtues</i>
G. Vīrtūt-īs,	<i>of virtue</i>	G. Vīrtūt-um,	<i>of virtues</i>
D. Vīrtūt-ī,	<i>to virtue</i>	D. Vīrtūt-ībūs,	<i>to virtues</i>
A. Vīrtūt-em,	<i>virtue</i>	A. Vīrtūt-ēs,	<i>virtues</i>
V. Vīrtūs,	<i>O virtue</i>	V. Vīrtūt-ēs,	<i>O virtues</i>
Ab. Vīrtūt-ē,	<i>with virtue</i>	Ab. Vīrtūt-ībūs,	<i>with virtues.</i>
So Sālūs (health), sālūtīs		Laūs (praise), laūdīs	
Ētās (age), ētātīs		Vōx (a voice), vōcīs.	

So other feminines—

Ārūdō (a reed), ārūdīnīs	Rātīō (reason), rātīōnīs
Ōrigō (origin), ōrīgīnīs	Sēgēs (standing corn), sēgētīs.

3. Neuters in -us, -ur, -ut, -en, and -or.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Ōpūs,	<i>a work</i>	N. Ōpēr-ā,	<i>works</i>
G. Ōpēr-īs,	<i>of a work</i>	G. Ōpēr-um,	<i>of works</i>
D. Ōpēr-ī,	<i>to a work</i>	D. Ōpēr-ībūs,	<i>to works</i>
A. Ōpūs,	<i>a work</i>	A. Ōpēr-ā,	<i>works</i>
V. Ōpūs,	<i>O work</i>	V. Ōpēr-ā,	<i>O works</i>
Ab. Ōpēr-ē,	<i>with a work</i>	Ab. Ōpēr-ībūs,	<i>with works.</i>

So <i>Căpūt</i> (a head), <i>căpītīs</i>	<i>Jūs</i> (right), <i>jūrīs</i>
<i>Cărmēn</i> (a song), <i>cărmīnīs</i>	<i>Littūs</i> (a shore), <i>littōrīs</i>
<i>Cōr</i> (a heart), <i>cōrdīs</i>	<i>Mārmōr</i> (sea), <i>mārmōrīs</i>
<i>Fulgūr</i> (lightning), <i>fūlgūrīs</i>	<i>Mēl</i> (honey), <i>mēllīs</i>
	<i>Mūnūs</i> (a gift), <i>mūnērīs</i> .

4. Neuters in -ār (āris) and -āl (ālis).

Singular.

N. <i>Ānīmāl</i> ,	<i>an animal</i>
G. <i>Ānīmāl-īs</i> ,	<i>of an animal</i>
D. <i>Ānīmāl-i</i> ,	<i>to an animal</i>
A. <i>Ānīmāl</i> ,	<i>an animal</i>
V. <i>Ānīmāl</i> ,	<i>O animal</i>
Ab. <i>Ānīmāl-i</i> ,	<i>with an animal</i>

Plural.

N. <i>Ānīmāl-iā</i> ,	<i>animals</i>
G. <i>Ānīmāl-ium</i> ,	<i>of animals</i>
D. <i>Ānīmāl-ibūs</i> ,	<i>to animals</i>
A. <i>Ānīmāl-iā</i> ,	<i>animals</i>
V. <i>Ānīmāl-iā</i> ,	<i>O animals</i>
Ab. <i>Ānīmāl-ibūs</i> ,	<i>with ani-</i> <i>[mals.]</i>

So *Vēctīgāl* (revenue), *vēctīgālīs*. *Cālcār* (a spur), *cālcārīs*.

But *jūbār* (a ray), *jūbārīs*, &c., with no plural, is declined like *ōpūs*.

Examples of the Ordinary

Declension of Imparisyllabic Nouns.*

Masculine and Feminine.

O. <i>Lēō</i> (a lion),	G. <i>Lēōnīs</i>	S. (1.) <i>Lāpīs</i> (stone) (<i>d</i>),	<i>Lāpīdīs</i>
<i>Ōrdō</i> (order),	<i>Ōrdīnīs</i>	<i>Pālūs</i> (marsh),	<i>Pālūdīs</i>
ER. <i>Cārcēr</i> (gaol),	<i>Cārcērīs</i>	<i>Ōbsēs</i> (hostage),	<i>Ōbsīdīs</i>
TER. <i>Pātēr</i> (father),	<i>Pātrīs</i>	(2.) <i>Sēgēs</i> (corn) (<i>t</i>),	<i>Sēgētīs</i>
OR. <i>Hōnōr</i> (honour),	<i>Hōnōrīs</i>	<i>Ātās</i> (age),	<i>Ātātīs</i>
<i>Ārbōr</i> (tree),	<i>Ārbōrīs</i>	<i>Mīlēs</i> (soldier),	<i>Mīlītīs</i> ,

* The *Genitive*, in the Third Declension, is formed—

- I. In Parisyllables, by changing the last syllable into *is*: as, *nūbēs*, *nūbīs*; *civis*, *civīs*; and *mārē*, *mārīs*.
- II. In Imparisyllables,
 1. Words in *ter* leave out *e*: as, *pātēr*, *pātrīs*; *vēntēr*, *vēntrīs*; so also *imbrēr*, *imbrīs*.
 2. By adding *is*: as, *sōl*, *sōlīs*; *cārcēr*, *cārcērīs*.
 - a. By adding *is*, and at the same time changing the final *s* into *d*, *t*, or *r*: as, *pēs*, *pēdīs*; *ātās*, *ātātīs*; *jūs*, *jūrīs*.
 - b. By changing also the preceding vowel: as, *căpūt*, *căpūtīs*; *cōrpūs*, *cōrpōrīs*.
 3. By adding *is*: as, *lēō*, *lēōnīs*; and
 - b. With a change of the preceding vowel: *cărmēn*, *cărmīnīs*.
 4. By inserting *i*—
 - a. Between two final consonants: as, *ārēs*, *ārēīs*; or,
 - b. Between the two consonants, into which *s* can be resolved, *i. e.* *cs* and *gs*: as, *pās* (*cs*), *pācīs*; *cōnjūs* (*gs*), *cōnjūgīs*.

(3.) Tēllūs (earth) (r),	G. Tēllūrīs	X. Pāx (peace),	Pācis
Cērēs (Ceres),	Cērērīs	Jūdēx (judge),	Jūdīcīs
Cīnīs (ash),	Cīnērīs	Cārvīx (neck),	Cārvīcīs
(4.) Trābs (beam) (r),	Trābīs	Cōnjūx (spouse),	Cōnjūgia.
Prīncēps (the first),	Prīncīpīs		

Neuters.

L. Ānimāl (animal)	G. Ānimālīs	UR. Fūlgūr (lightning),	G. Fūl- [gūrīs]
N. Cārmēn (song),	Cārmīnīs	US. Ōpūs (work),	Ōpērīs
AR. Cālcār (spur),	Cālcārīs	Littūs (shore),	Littōrīs
Jūbār (ray),	Jūbārīs	Jūs (right),	Jūrīs.
OR. Āquōr (surface),	Āquōrīs		

ADDITIONS AND EXCEPTIONS.

Masculine and Feminine.

O. Cārō (flesh),	G. Cārnis	Sanguis (blood),	Sānguīnīs
Mācēdō (Macedonian),	Mācē- [dōnīs]	Bōs (an ox or cow),	Bōvīs
L. Sōl (the sun),	Sōlīs	X. Nīx (snow),	Nīvīs
AR. Fār (spelt),	Fārīs	Nōx (night),	Nōctīs
UR. Fūr (thief),	Fūrīs	Sēnēx (an old man),	Sēnīs
S. As (pound),	Assīs	Sūpēllēx (furniture),	Sūpēl- [lēctīlīs].

Neuters.

C. Lāc (milk),	G. Lāctīs	S. Vās (a vase),	G. Vāsīs
Alēc (fish-pickle),	Alēcīs	Æs (brass),	Ærīs
L. Mēl (honey),	Mēllīs	Ōs (a face),	Ōrīs
Fēl (gall),	Fēllīs	Ōs (a bone),	Ōssīs
ER. Vēr (spring),	Vērīs	UT. Cāpūt (a head),	Cāpītīs
Itēr (a journey),	Itērīs	with its compounds.*	
UR. Ēbūr (ivory),	Ēbōrīs		
Jēcūr (liver),	Jēcōrīs,		
	and Jēcīnōrīs		

* The Genitive plural ends in *rum* :—

1. Of Parissyllables: as, *nūbium*, *civium*, *martium*, and *tussum*.

2. Of words that have *i* in the Ablative singular; as, *animantium*, *virium*, from *vis*, and *calcantium*, from *calcitr*.

3. Of most words, whose nominative ends in *s* or *x* after a consonant: as, *clienſum*, from *clīens*, a client; *arcium* from *ars*, a citadel.

4. Of most monosyllables.

Obs. 1.—N. Jūpītēr (or Jūppītēr) D. Jōvī V. Jūpītēr (or Jūppītēr)
 G. Jōvis A. Jōvem A. Jōvē
Bōs has *bōum* in the Gen. pl., and *bōbūs* and *būbūs* in the Dat. pl.
Sūs makes *sūtūs* and *sūbūs* in Dat. pl.*

But the genitive ends in *um* :—

1. Of Imparsyllables : *as*, *lāpidum*, *virtūtum*, *op̄erum*, &c.
 2. Of most polysyllables in *as*, that have also the more common form in *um* ; *as*, *bellētum*, *pārētum*, &c.
 3. Of the following exceptions :—
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| (a) <i>Accipītēr</i> , a hawk | <i>Pānis</i> , bread |
| <i>Cānis</i> , a dog | <i>Pātēr</i> , a father |
| <i>Frātēr</i> , a brother | <i>Sēnēx</i> , an old man |
| <i>Juvenis</i> , a youth | <i>Strūēs</i> , a heap |
| <i>Mātēr</i> , a mother | <i>Vātes</i> , a prophet. |
| <i>Apis</i> (a bee), and <i>volūcris</i> (a bird), generally have <i>um</i> . | |
| (b) <i>Crūs</i> , a leg | <i>Mōs</i> , a custom |
| <i>Dūs</i> , a leader | <i>Nūs</i> , a nut |
| <i>Fūs</i> , a torch | <i>Pēs</i> , a foot |
| <i>Flōs</i> , a flower | <i>Phryx</i> , a Phrygian |
| <i>Frūgēs</i> , pl. fruits | <i>Prēcēs</i> , pl. prayers |
| <i>Fūr</i> , a thief | <i>Prēs</i> , a surety |
| <i>Grēs</i> , a flock | <i>Rēs</i> , a king |
| <i>Grūs</i> , a crane | <i>Sūs</i> , a pig |
| <i>Grŷps</i> , a griffin | <i>Thrās</i> , a Thracian |
| <i>Laūs</i> , praise | <i>Trōs</i> , a Trojan |
| <i>Lēs</i> , a law | <i>Vōs</i> , a voice. |
| <i>Lŷnax</i> , a lynx | |

Fraūs (deceit) has both *fraūdūm* and *fraudum*.

Rēnēs, pl. (the kidneys) generally has *rēnum*.

ŷum plurāl genitivō

Plerūmq̄e p̄risyllābā,

Ut *nubēs*, cāp̄lūt; Et *um*

Hābēt imp̄risyllābā.

Sēd *um* dānt *sēnēs*, *pātēr*, *pānis*,

Vātes, *accipītēr*, Et *cānis*,

Et *frātēr*, *mātēr*, *juvenis*,

Et *terē apis*, *volūcris*.

Cōtrā, quōt i dānt āblativō,

Assūmūt *um* gen̄itivō;

Et quā pōst cōnōnāntem s

Finīt, v̄l s; Ut *cilēus*, *ārs*;

Quōd, quē unā tāntūm gaudēt

Syllābā, plerūmq̄e laudānt.

Sēd quēdā sūnt excip̄iendā,

Mēmōriāq̄e cōmmittendā;

Ūm dānt *dūs*, *nūs*, Et *rēs*, Et *lēs*,

Grŷps, *Phryx*, Et *lŷnax*, *Thrās*, *fāx*, Et

[grēs,

Vōs, *fūr*, Et *splēs*, Et *laūs*, Et *mōs*,

Crūs, *grūs*, Et *sūs*, *prēs*, *pēs*, Et *flōs*.

Um frūgēs, *prēcēs*, *rēnēs* dānt,

A fraudē Et *um* Et *ŷum* stānt.

* To this declension belong a multitude of words derived from Greek words of the fifth (or third) declension of simple nouns or of the contracted forms, which are used especially in poetry. These in general follow the usual mode of declension, but have some peculiarities.

1. In the *Genitive case*, Singular,

A. Pōēmā, pōēmātis (*ποιήμα, ποιήματος*).

N. Tītān, Tītānis (*Τίταν, Τίτανος*).

Gōrgōn, Gōrgōnis (*Γοργών, Γοργώνος*).

Xēnōphōn, Xēnōphōntis (*Ξενοφών, Ξενοφώντος*).

Echō, Echūs (*ἤχω, ἤχους, ἤχους*).

Mācēdō, Mācēdōnis (*Μακεδών, Μακεδόνος*).

ER. Āthēr, āthēris (*αἶθρῃ, αἰθίρας*).

Obs. 2. On the GENDER of nouns of the Third Declension.

Besides the general rules, which have been already mentioned, there are five special rules about the gender of nouns of the third declension, viz.—

1. MONOSYLLABLES ARE FEMININE: as, *laūs*, praise; *pārs*, a part.*
2. Words ending in *ĕ, ĕn, ūr, ūs, pūt, ār*, and *āl*, are neuter: as, *mārĕ*, the sea; *cārmĕn*, a song; *fūlgŭr*, lightning; *ŏpŭs*, a work; *cāpūt*, a head; *cālcār*, a spur, and *ānīmāl*, an animal.†

AS. *Lāmpās*, *lāmpādīs* (λαμπάς, λαμπάδος).

ES. *Ēlēphās*, *Ēlēphāntīs* (ἐλίφας, ἐλίφαντος).

ES. *Pēriclēs*, *Pēriclīs*, }
also *Pēriclī*. }

Ūlyssēs, *Ūlyssēs*, }
also *Ūlyssēl*. }

IS. *Pōēsis*, *pōēseōs* (ποίησις, ποιήσεως),
also *pōēsis*, in prose.

Pāris, *Paridīs*.

OS. *Chāōs*, *chāōs* (χάος, χάος, χάους).

Hērōs, *hērōs* (ἥρως, ἥρωος);

YS. *Chlāmŷs*, *chlāmŷdīs* (χλαμύς, χλαμύδος).

2. In the Accusative singular, Imparisyllables have also a form in *a* (like *Titŭna*), besides the usual accusative: as, *āērā*, *āērem*; *āthērā*, *āthērem*; *Pāridā*, *Pāridem*; *Āgāmēmnoḁā*, *Āgāmēmnoḁem*.

* Except—

Masculines.

Ās, an unit

Dēns, a tooth

Flōs, a flower

Fōns, a fountain

Fŭr, a thief

Glīs, a dormouse

Grĕs, a flock

Mās, a male

Mōns, a mountain

Mōs, a habit

Mūs, a mouse

Pēs, a foot

Pōns, a bridge

Prās, a surety

Rēnēs, pl., the kidneys

Rĕs, a king

Rōs, dew

Sāl, salt

Sōl, the sun

Splĕn, the spleen

Vas, g. *vādīs*, a security.

Neuters.

Ās, brass

Cŏr, the heart

Crūs, a leg

Fŏr, spelt

Fĕl, gall

Jūs, right

Lāc, milk

Mĕl, honey

Ōs, g. *ōrīs*, a face

Ōs, g. *ōsīs*, a bone

Pūs, pus

Rūs, the country

Vās, g. *vāsīs*, a vessel

Vĕr, the spring.

† Except—

1. Words in *us*, not declined like *ŏpŭs*, *ŏpĕrĭs*, *lūtŭs*, *lūtŏrĭs*, are feminine:

as, *jŭvĕnŭs*, *jŭvĕnŭs*, youth.

sĕrvitŭs, *sĕrvitŭs*, slavery, &c.

and, *pĕcŭs*, *pĕcŭdīs*, a beast, or cattle (individually); though *pĕcŭs*, *pecŏrīs*, cattle (collectively), or a flock or herd, is neuter.

3. PARISYLLABLES ARE FEMININE: *as, nūbēs* (a cloud), *tūssis* (a cough).*
4. WORDS INCREASING SHORT ARE MASCULINE: *as, lāpis, lāpidis*, a stone; *cārcēr, cārcērīs*, a gaol. †
5. WORDS INCREASING LONG ARE FEMININE: *as, virtūs, virtūtis*, virtue; *ætās, ætātis*, age; *ratiō, ratiōnis*, reason. ‡

The five special rules may be expressed in memorial lines, as follows:—

I.

Quæ nōn auctā syllābam
Ūnām tāntūm prōferunt,
Partēs sēqui fēmininās
Sēpiūs cōstitūunt.

Sunt tamēn quæ miscēant
Sē cātēris hōstium:
Et quæ cōtrā mūnerā
Explēant nēutrālium.

1. Nām māsculinās cōpiās
Aūgēt vās (vādīs), mās, et ās,
Sūl, sōl, et fūr, prās. pēs, et flōs,
Glīs, rōs, et splēn, et mūs, et mōs,
Et rēx, et grēx, et pōns, et fōns,
Plūrālī rēnēs, dēns, et mōns.
2. Sēd nēutris sēsē jūngunt mēl,
Vās (vāsīs), ās, et lāc, et fēl,
Ōs (ōsis), pūs, ōs (ōris), jūs,
Cōr, vēr, et crūs, et fār, et rūs.

Fūr, a thief
Lēpūs, a hare
Pectēn, a comb

Turtūr, a turtle
Vultur, a vulture.

* Except masculines in *is*, &c.

Amnis, a river
Axis, an axle
Caulis, a cabbage-stalk
Collis, a hill
Crinis, hair
Ensis, a sword
Finis, a boundary
Funis, a rope
Fusis, a club
Ignis, fire

Imber, rain
Mensis, a month
Orbis, a circle
Panis, bread
Piscis, a fish
Postis, a post
Unguis, a nail
Ventris, the belly
&c.

† Feminine exceptions—

1. Words in *o*, especially in *ō* and *gō*: *as, fōrmidō, fōrmidinis*, fear; *ōrigō, originis*, origin.

But *Mārgō, mārginis*, an edge
Cārdō, cārdinis, a hinge
Tūrbō, tūrbinis, a whirlwind
Ōrdō, ōrdinis, order

} are masculine.

2. *Cārēs, cāricis*, a rush,
Chlāmŷs, chlāmŷdis, a cloak
Cūspis, cūspidis, a point
Hŷems, hŷemis, winter
Lāmpās, lāmpadis, a torch

Mērgēs, mērgētis, a sheaf
Pēcūs, pēcūdis, a beast
Sēgēs, sēgētis, standing corn
Tēgēs, tēgētis, a mat
&c.

‡ Masculine exceptions—

Words in *er*, *or*, *os*, *ens*, and *o*: *as, crātēr, crātēris*, a bowl; *lābōr* or *lābōs, lābōris*, labour; *cliēns, cliēnis*, a client; *sērmō, sērmōnis*, a discourse; *sēptēntriō, sēptēntriōnis*, the north.

II.

Neutrius sunt generis,
Quæ flexionē parēt his:—
Mārē, cārmēn, fulgūr, ōpūs,
Cāpūt, calcār, ānīmāl;
Quæ claudunt *ē, ēn, ūr, ēt ūs,*
Necnōn *ēt pūt, ēt ār, ēt āl.*

Sed quōt in *ūs* nōn sic flectuntūr,
Partēs amānt fēmininās;
Ēt lēpūs, fūrfūr, vultūr, turtūr,
Ēt pectēn, pētunt māsculinās.

III.

Gaudēt generē fēmininō,
Quæ nōn crēscunt gēnitivō.
Sed māsculinī generis
Sunt quēdām nōminā in *īs;*

Sic *ārīs, amnīs, ignīs, ēnsīs,*
Pānis, piscis, pōstis, mēnsīs,
Cōllīs, orbis, fūnis, finīs,
Vēntēr, imbēr, ūnguis, crīnīs.

IV.

Nōminā crēscēntiā,
Quēis brēvis pēnultimā,
Generē sunt māsculā.
Sed *dō ēt gō;* *ēt cārēx, sēgēs,*
Ēt chlāmīs, cūspīs, hiēms, tēgēs,

* } *Ēt lāmpās, mērgēs, et pēcūs,*
Fēmininis jūngimūs.

V.

Nōminā crēscēntiā,
Lōgā quēis pēnultimā
Rēpēritūr gēnitivī,
Generis sunt fēmininī.

Sed *ēr, ēt ōr vėl ōs, ēt ēns,*
Ūt crātēr, lābōr, ēt cliēns;
Ēt ō, ūt sērmō; māsculinis
Addunt sē, nōn fēmininis.

§ 15. FOURTH DECLENSION

Characteristic Vowel *u*.

The nominative singular of the Fourth Declension ends in *us* of the masculine gender, and *u* of the neuter: as, *gradus*, a step, and *cornu*, a horn.

1. Masculines in *-us*.

Singular.

N.	Grād-ūs,	<i>a step</i>
G.	Grād-ūs,	<i>of a step</i>
D.	Grād-ūī,	<i>to a step</i>
Acc.	Grād-um,	<i>a step</i>
V.	Grād-ūs,	<i>O step</i>
Abl.	Grād-ū,	<i>with a step</i>

Plural.

N.	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
G.	Grād-ūm,	<i>of steps</i>
D.	Grād-ībūs,	<i>to steps</i>
Acc.	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
V.	Grād-ūs,	<i>O steps</i>
Abl.	Grād-ībūs,	<i>with steps.</i>

Masculine.

So *Currūs*, a chariot
Fluctūs, a wave
Fructūs, fruit
Grēssūs, a step.

Feminine.

Mānūs, a hand
Nūrūs, a daughter-
in-law.

2. Neuters in -u.

Singular.

N. *Cōrn-ū*, a horn
G. *Cōrn-ūs*, of a horn
D. (*Cōrn-ūi*) *Cōrnū* to a horn
Acc. *Cōrn-ū*, a horn
V. *Cōrn-ū*, O horn
Abl. *Cōrn-ū*, with a horn

Plural.

N. *Cōrn-ūā*, horns
G. *Cōrn-ūum*, of horns
D. *Cōrn-ībūs*, to horns
Acc. *Cōrn-ūā*, horns
V. *Cōrn-ūā*, O horns
Abl. *Cōrn-ībūs*, with horns.

So *Gēlū*, frost (no plural)
Gēnū, a knee

Tōnitrū, thunder
Vērū, a spit: see below.

Obs. 1. *Domus* belongs to both the Second and Fourth Declensions, but has not all the forms of both.

Singular.

N. *Dōmūs*
G. *Dōmūs* (and *dōmī*)
D. *Dōmūi* and *dōmō*
Acc. *Dōmum*
V. *Dōmūs*
Abl. *Dōmō*

Plural.

N. *Dōmūs*
G. *Dōmūum* and *dōmōrum*
D. *Dōmībūs*
Acc. *Dōmōs* (rarely *dōmūs*)
V. *Dōmūs*
Abl. *Dōmībūs*.

Hence the memorial line:—

*Spēpnē me, mu, mi, mis, sī dēclīnārē dōmūs vīs. **

* Also *Cōlūs*, a distaff
Ficūs, a fig
Laūrūs, a bay

Pēnūs, provisions
Pinūs, a pine.

belong to both declensions.

The Dative Plural of the following words ends in *ūbūs*:—

Ācūs, a needle
Ārcūs, a bow
Ārtūs, a joint
Ficūs, a fig
Lācūs, a lake
Pārtūs, birth

Pēcū, cattle
Quērcūs, an oak
Spēcūs, a cave
Tribūs, a tribe
Vērū, a spit.

And *pōrtūs*, a harbour, has usually *pōrtūbūs*, though *pōrtūbūs* occurs.

These words are included in the following lines:—

Dātīvō *quērcūs quērcūbūs*
Plūrāl. *ficūs ficūbūs*
Dābūt; sic *spēcūs, ārcūs, ācūs,*

Et *tribūs, pēcū, vērū, lācūs,*
ārtūs, et pārtūs pārtūbūs,
Et *serē pōrtūs pōrtūbūs.*

Obs. 2. The Fourth Declension is mostly composed of words derived from verbs: *as, rīsūs*, from *ridēō*; *grādūs*, from *grādīor*; *cūlūs*, from *cōlō*, &c.

Obs. 3. On the Gender of words of the Fourth Declension—

1. Words in *us* are masculine.

Except those feminines—

Ācūs, a needle

Ānūs, an old woman

Cōlūs, a distaff

Dōmūs, a house

Idūs (pl.), the Ides

Mānūs, a hand

Nūrūs, a daughter-in-law

Pōrticūs, a portico

Sōcrūs, a mother-in-law

Tribūs, a tribe.

Pēnūs, victuals, is common, § 9, p.

2. Words in *ū* are neuter.

The memorial lines are—

Māscūlīnīs sēmpēr ūs,

Neūtris ū cōnjūgīmūs.

Sēd fēminīs pōrticūs,

Ēt dōmūs, sōcrūs, ēt ācūs,

Idūs ēt tribūs, cōlūs, mānūs,

Ēt sēpē pēnūs, nūrūs, ānūs.

§ 16. FIFTH DECLENSION.

Characteristic Vowel *ē*.

The Nominative Singular of the Fifth Declension ends in *es*, of the feminine gender: *as, res*, a thing—

Singular.

N. *Rēs*, a thing

G. *Rē-ī*, of a thing

D. *Rē-ī*, to a thing

Acc. *Rēm*, a thing

V. *Rēs*, O thing

Abl. *Rē*, with a thing

Plural.

N. *Rēs*, things

G. *Rē-rūm*, of things

D. *Rē-būs*, to things

Acc. *Rēs*, things

V. *Rēs*, O things

Abl. *Rē-būs*, with things.

So *Āciēs*, an edge

Dīēs, a day

Ēffigīēs, an image

Fāciēs, a face

Spēciēs, an appearance

Spēs, hope.

But only *dīēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout in the plural number.

Obs. 1. Where the *e* in the genitive or dative occurs between two *r*'s, it is long: *as, diēi, faciēi*; otherwise it is short: *as, rēi, fidēi*.

Obs. 2. All the words of this declension are feminine, except *dīēs* and *mēridiēs*. The latter is masculine: *dīēs* is common in the singular, but only masculine in the plural. It is almost always masculine when it signifies *day*; and feminine, when it means *time* (of duration): *as, longā dīēs*, &c.

§ 17. CONCLUDING REMARKS ON SUBSTANTIVES.

Obs. 1. Many words have only one, two, or three or more cases, or are declined only in one number.

Thus—

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Injussū</i> , without order | <i>Nātū</i> , by birth |
| <i>Jussū</i> , by order | <i>Nōctū</i> , by night. |
| 2. <i>Fōrs</i> , chance; | Ab. <i>fōrtē</i> |
| <i>Jūgērtis</i> , of an acre; | Ab. <i>jūgērē</i> ; Plural, <i>jūgērē</i> |
| <i>Spōntis</i> , of one's own accord; | Ab. <i>spōntē</i> . |
| &c. | |
| 3. <i>Ditōnis</i> , of power; D. <i>ditōni</i> ; | Acc. <i>ditōnem</i> ; Ab. <i>ditōnē</i> . |
| No plural. | |
| <i>Ōpis</i> , of ability; | A. <i>ōpēm</i> . Ab. <i>ōpē</i> ; Plural, <i>ōpēs</i> , &c. |
| <i>Prēcī</i> , to prayer; | A. <i>prēcēm</i> ; Ab. <i>prēcē</i> ; Plural, <i>prēcēs</i> , &c. |
| <i>Vicis</i> , of turn; | A. <i>vicēm</i> ; Ab. <i>vicē</i> ; Plural, <i>vicēs</i> , &c. |
| 4. Only in the plural:— | |

1. Masculines.

<i>Libēri</i> , children	<i>Pēnātēs</i> , household gods
<i>Mājōrēs</i> , ancestors	<i>Prēcērēs</i> , elders
<i>Minōrēs</i> , descendants	<i>Sūpēri</i> , gods above.

2. Feminines.

<i>Cālēndā</i> , the calends	<i>Idūs</i> , the Ides
<i>Cūnā</i> , a cradle	<i>Insidiā</i> , an ambuscade
<i>Divitiā</i> , wealth	<i>Mīnā</i> , threats
<i>Ēxūviā</i> , spoils	<i>Nōnā</i> , the nonea.

3. Neuters.

<i>Ārmā</i> , arms	<i>Mūnīā</i> , fortifications
<i>Cūnābulā</i> , a cradle	<i>Prēcōrdiā</i> , the beast
<i>Ērtā</i> , entrails	<i>Tēsquā</i> , deserts.

4. Towns of different genders.

<i>Āthēnā</i> , Athens	<i>Sūsā</i> , Susa
<i>Gābī</i> , the town Gabii	<i>Thēbā</i> , Thebes, &c. &c.

These words are plural, because they have in each case a plural meaning: as, *prēcōrdia*, literally, the parts about the heart; *Athenæ*, the upper and lower towns of Athens.

Obs. 2. Some words change their mode of declension in the plural: thus—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Cārbāsūs</i> (canvass)	<i>Cārbāsā</i>
<i>Frānum</i> (a bit)	{ <i>Frāni</i> <i>Frānā</i>
<i>Jōcūs</i> (a joke)	{ <i>Jōci</i> <i>Jōcā</i>
<i>Lōcūs</i> (a place)	{ <i>Lōci</i> <i>Lōcā</i>
<i>Pērgāmūs</i> (Troy)	<i>Pērgāmā</i>
<i>Rāstrum</i> (a harrow)	{ <i>Rāstri</i> <i>Rāstrā</i>
<i>Tārtātrūs</i> (hell)	<i>Tārtārā</i>

Obs. 3. Some Substantives are frequently used in apposition (§ 54, p. 112) as Adjectives, and have kindred forms for the masculine and feminine: thus—

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
1. <i>Dōmīnūs</i> , a lord	<i>Dōmīnā</i> , a lady
<i>Māgīstēr</i> , a master	<i>Māgīstrā</i> , a mistress
2. <i>Ūlōr</i> , an avenger	<i>Ūlōrix</i>
<i>Victōr</i> , a conqueror	<i>Victōrix</i> , a conqueress.

Obs. 4. Some words used as Substantives are composed of two members, the one a Substantive, and the other an Adjective: as—

N. <i>Rēs-pūblicā</i>	N. <i>Jūs-jūrāndūm</i>
G. <i>Rēi-pūblicā</i>	G. <i>Jūris-jūrāndi</i>
D. <i>Rēi-pūblicā</i>	D. <i>Jūri-jūrāndō</i>
&c.	&c.

CHAPTER IV.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

§ 18. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

THERE are three kinds of Adjectives, viz :—

1. Adjectives of Three Terminations, one for each gender : as, *bōnūs*, *bōnā*, *bōnum*, good ; *tēnēr*, *tēnērā*, *tēnērūm*, tender ; and *ācēr*, *ācērīs*, *ācērē*, sharp.
2. Adjectives of Two Terminations, one for the masculine and feminine, and one for the neuter : as, *trīstīs*, *trīstē*, sad ; and *mēliōr*, *mēliūs*, better. And
3. Adjectives of One Termination in the nominative for all genders : as, *fēlix*, happy ; *ingēns*, vast.

§ 19. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

1. Most Adjectives of three terminations are declined, in the Masculine and Neuter Genders, like Substantives of the Second Declension; and in the Feminine, like the First: as, *bōnūs*, good; *nīgēr*, dark; and *tēnēr*, tender.

Singular.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um
G. Bōn-ī	bōn-æ	bōn-i
D. Bōn-ō	bōn-æ	bōn-ō
A. Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um
V. Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um
Ab. Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō

Plural.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Bōn-ī	bōn-æ	bōn-ā
G. Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
D. Bōn-īs	Bōn-īs	
A. Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
V. Bōn-ī	bōn-æ	bōn-ā
Ab. Bōn-īs.	Bōn-īs.	

So *Āltūs*, high
Cārūs, dear
Clārūs, bright, famous
Cūrṽs, bent
Dēnsūs, thick
Dūrūs, hard
Lētūs, joyful
Māgnūs, great
Ōdōrūs, sweet
Pārṽs, small
Pīūs, pious
Sāvūs, cruel
Vāstūs, vast

Cōllīs āltūs, a high hill
Pūēr cārūs, a dear boy
Lūx clārā, a bright light
Cōrnū cūrṽm, a bent horn
Nūbēs dēnsā, a thick cloud
Quērcūs dūrā, a hard oak
Naūtā lētūs, a joyful sailor
Clāssis māgnā, a great fleet
Laūrūs ōdōrā, a sweet bay
Rēs pārṽ, a small thing
Virtūs pīā, pious virtue
Ānimāl sāvum, a cruel animal
Rēgnūm vāstum, a vast kingdom.

Singular.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Nīġēr	nīġr-ă	nīġr-um
G. Nīġr-ī	nīġr-æ	nīġr-ī
D. Nīġr-ō	nīġr-æ	nīġr-ō
A. Nīġr-um	nīġr-am	nīġr-um
V. Nīġēr	nīġr-ă	nīġr-um
Ab. Nīġr-ō	nīġr â	nīġr-ō

Plural.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Nīġr-ī	nīġr-æ	nīġr-ă
G. Nīġr-ōrum	nīġr-ārum	nīġr-ōrum
D.	Nīġr-is	
A. Nīġr-ōs	nīġr-ās	nīġr-ă
V. Nīġr-ī	nīġr-æ	nīġr-ă
Ab.	Nīġr-is.	

So *Ātēr*, black*Crēbēr*, frequent*Pūlchēr*, beautiful*Nēmūs ātrum*, a black grove*Vētūs crēbēr*, frequent wind*Rōsă pūlchră*, a beautiful rose.*Singular.*

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Tēnēr	tēnēr-ă	tēnēr-um
G. Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ī
D. Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ō
A. Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um
V. Tēnēr	tēnēr-ă	tēnēr-um
Ab. Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-â	tēnēr-ō

Plural.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ă
G. Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum
D.	Tēnēr-is	
A. Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ă
V. Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ă
Ab.	Tēnēr-is.	

So *Ānimūs libēr*, a free mind *Hīems āspērđ*, rough winter
Cārmēn mīserum, a wretched poem *Pūellā tēnērđ*, a tender girl.

Obs. 1. The following words are declined like *tēnēr*—

<i>Āspēr</i> , rough	<i>Mīser</i> , wretched
<i>Lācēr</i> , torn	<i>Prōspēr</i> , prosperous
<i>Libēr</i> , free	<i>Sātūr</i> , full.

With compounds of *fērō* and *gērō*: as, *aūrīfēr*, gold-bearing, and *bēlīgēr*, warlike. See p. 11.

2. Some Adjectives of three terminations are declined like the Third Declension of Substantives: as, *ācēr*, *ācrīs*, *ācrē*, sharp; *cēlēr*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*, swift.

Singular.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	Ācēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē
G.		Ācr-īs	
D.		Ācr-ī	
A.	Ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē
V.	Ācēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē
Ab.		Ācrī	

Plural.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	Ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
G.		Ācr-īum	
D.		Ācr-ībūs	
A.	Ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
V.	Ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
Ab.		Acr-ībūs.	

Singular.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	Cēlēr	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-ē
G.		Cēlēr-īs	
D.		Cēlēr-ī	
A.	Cēlēr-em	cēlēr-em	cēlēr-ē
V.	Cēlēr	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-ē
Ab.		Cēlēr-ī	

Plural.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Călăr-ēs	călăr-ēs	călăr-îă
G.	Călăr-îum	
D.	Călăr-îbūs	
A. Călăr-ēs	călăr-ēs	călăr-îă
V. Călăr-ēs	călăr-ēs	călăr-îă
Ab.	Călăr-îbūs.	

So *Dăz călēbăr*, a famous general

Grădūs călăr, a quick step

Milēs ācăr, a keen soldier

Pennā vōlūcris, a swift wing.

Obs. 2. The following words are declined like *acer*—

Ālēcăr, brisk

Ēquēstěr, equestrian

Pēdēstěr, on foot

Sălūběr, wholesome

Tērrēstěr, belonging to land

Vōlūcăr, winged.

3. *Ūnūs* (one), *tōtūs* (the whole), and *sōlūs* (alone), are declined irregularly in the singular number : as—

N. Ūn-ūs	ūn-ă	ūn-um
G.	Ūn-īūs	
D.	Ūn-ī	
A. Ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um
V. Ūn-ē	ūn-ă	ūn-um
Ab. Ūn-ō	ūn-â	ūn-ō.

§ 20. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS, AND ONE TERMINATION.

Adjectives of Two Terminations and One are declined like the Third Declension of Substantives : as, *tristis*, sad, and *mélior*, better ; *fēlix*, happy, and *ingēns*, vast.

1. Adjectives of Two Terminations.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Trist-īs	trist-īs	trist-ē	N. Trist-ēs	trist-ēs	trist-îă
G.	Trist-īs		G.	Trist-îum	
D.	Trist-ī		D.	Trist-îbūs	
A. Trist-em	trist-em	trist-ē	A. Trist-ēs	trist-ēs	trist-îă
V. Trist-īs	trist-īs	trist-ē	V. Trist-ēs	trist-ēs	trist-îă
Ab.	Trist-ī		Ab.	Tristī-būs.	

So *Brēvis*, short
Dulcis, sweet
Fortis, brave
Gravis, heavy, important
Milis, mild
Rudis, rough

Vita brevis, short life
Optum dulce, sweet ease
Vir fortis, a brave man
Opus grave, an important work
Magister milis, a mild master
Lapis rudis, a rough stone.

Singular.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Melliōr	melliōr	melliūs
G.	Melliōr-īs	
D.	Melliōr-i	
A. Melliōr-em	melliōr-em	melliūs
V. Melliōr	melliōr	melliūs
Ab.	Melliōr-ē or melliōr-i	

Plural.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Melliōr-ēs	melliōr-ēs	melliōr-ā
G.	Melliōr-um	
D.	Melliōr-ibūs	
A. Melliōr-ēs	Melliōr-ēs	melliōr-ā
V. Melliōr-ēs	melliōr-ēs	melliōr-ā
Ab.	Melliōr-ibūs.	

So *Brēvior*, shorter
Lōgior, longer
Mājor, greater

Iter brevius, a shorter journey
Dies longior, a longer day
Gloria maior, greater glory.

2. Adjectives of One Termination :—

Singular.

N.	Felix	
G.	Felic-īs	
D.	Felic-i	
A. Felic-em	Felic-em	felix
V.	Felix	
Ab.	Felic-i or felic-ē	

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
G.		Fēlic-īum	
D.		Fēlic-ībūs	
A.	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
V.	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
Ab.		Fēlic-ībūs.	

		<i>Singular.</i>	
N.		Ingēns	
G.		Ingēnt-īs	
D.		Ingēnt-ī	
A.	Ingēnt-em	ingēnt-em	ingēns
V.		Ingēns	
Ab.		Ingēnt-ī or Ingēnt-ē	

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ēs	Ingēnt-īā
G.		Ingēnt-īum	
D.		Ingēnt-ībūs	
A.	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-īā
V.	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ēs	Ingēnt-īā
Ab.		Ingēnt-ībūs.	

So	Ātrōx, fierce	Fācīnūs ātrōx, a cruel deed
	Aūdāx, bold	Hōmō aūdāx, a bold man
	Clēmēns, mild	Dōmīnūs clēmēns, a mild lord
	Rēcēns, fresh	Injūrā rēcēns, a fresh injury.

NOTE 1. Adjectives prefer the form in *i* of the Ablative to that in *e*: thus—

1. Those that have *e* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative, take *i* in the Ablative: as, *ācrī, cēlērī, trīstī*; and, among substantives, *mārī*.

2. In Adjectives of one termination both forms exist, but *i* is more common: as, *fēlīcī* rather than *fēlīcē*, and *ingēntī* than *ingēntē*.

But, *a.* Comparatives, like *mēlīōr*, have both forms, but the one in *e* is more used: as, *mēlīōrē, mājōrē*.

b. The following take *e* only:—

(*a.*) Words ending in *es*: as—

<i>Alēs</i> , winged (very rarely <i>i</i>)	<i>Hōspēs</i> , hospitable
<i>Dēsēs</i> , slothful	<i>Sōspēs</i> , safe
<i>Dīsēs</i> , rich	<i>Sūpersēs</i> , surviving.

Except *lētēs*, dull; and *tērēs*, round.

§ 21. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

1. *Āmbō* (both) and *dūō* (two) are thus declined, in the Plural Number only:—

N.	Āmb-ō	āmb-æ	āmb-ō
G.	Āmb-ōrum	āmb-ārum	āmb-ōrum
D.	Āmb-ōbūs	āmb-ābūs	āmb-ōbūs
Acc.	Āmb-ō <i>et</i> ōs	āmb-ās	āmb-ō
V.	Āmb-ō	āmb-æ	āmb-ō
Abl.	Āmb-ōbūs	āmb-ābūs	āmb-ōbūs.

(Compare *ἄμφω* and *δύο*.)

Trēs is declined like *tristēs*—

N. *Trēs, trēs, triā* | G. *Trium* | D. *Tribūs, &c.*

Plūs is thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.		
	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. A.	Plūs	N. Plūrēs	plūrēs	plūrā
G.	Plūrīs	G.	Plūrium	
Ab.	Plūrē (rare)		&c.	

2. The following are undeclined:—

- a. *Frūgī*, useful *Ōpūs*, needful
Nēquam, worthless *Nēcēssē*, necessary.
- b. All the Cardinal numerals from *four* up to *one hundred* inclusive, with *mīllē* in the singular.

§ 22. NUMERALS.*

The chief kinds of numerals are—

1. Cardinals,† answering the question *quōt?* how many?
2. Ordinals,‡ answering the question *quōtūs?* which in numeric order?

Cēlēbs, unmarried
Paupēr, poor

(β.)

Prīncēps, first
Pūbēr, of ripe age.

And the half-substantive *sēnēx*, old, an old person.

NOTE 2.—Those Adjectives which do not make *ia* in the neuter plural form the Genitive Plural in *um*: as, *vētērum*, *paupērum*, *mēlōrum*, *mājōrum*, &c. The poets also contracted *ium* into *um*, especially of participles in *ns*: as, *imminētum*, *pōtētum*, *rēcūsantum*, *sālūtantum*; for *imminēntium*, &c.

* Nūmērālīā.

† Cārdīnālīā, on which the rest hinge. Google

Ōrdīnālīā.

NUMERALS.

Arabian Figures.	Roman Figures.	Cardinals (one, &c.)	Ordinals (First, &c.)
1	I	Ūnūs, ā, um	Primūs
2	II	Dŭō, ē, ō	Sēcundūs, āltēr
3	III	Trēs, triā	Tertius
4	IV	Quātŭōr	Quartūs
5	V	Quinquē	Quintūs
6	VI	Sēx	Sēxtūs
7	VII	Sēptem	Sēptimūs
8	VIII	Ōctō	Ōctāvūs
9	IX	Nōvem	Nōnūs
10	X	Dēcem	Dēcimūs
11	XI	Ūn-dēcim	Ūn-dēcimūs
12	XII	Dŭō-dēcim	Dŭō-dēcimūs
13	XIII	Trē-dēcim	Tertius-dēcimūs
14	XIV	Quātŭōr-dēcim	Quartūs-dēcimūs
15	XV	Quin-dēcim	Quintūs-dēcimūs
16	XVI	Sē-dēcim	Sēxtūs-dēcimūs
17	XVII	Sēptēn-dēcim	Sēptimūs-dēcimūs
18	XVIII	Dŭō-dē-vigintī	Dŭō-dē-vicēsīmūs
19	XIX	Ūn-dē-vigintī	Ūn-dē-vicēsīmūs
20	XX	Vigintī	Vicēsīmūs
21 &c.	XXI	Vigintī ūnūs, &c.	Vicēsīmūs primūs, &c.
28	XXVIII	Dŭō-dē-trigintā	Dŭō-dē-tricēsīmūs
29	XXIX	Ūn-dē-trigintā	Ūn-dē-tricēsīmūs
30	XXX	Trigintā	Tricēsīmūs
40	XL	Quādrāgintā	Quādrāgēsīmūs
50	L	Quinquāgintā	Quinquāgēsīmūs
60	LX	Sēxāgintā	Sēxāgēsīmūs
70	LXX	Sēptuāgintā	Sēptuāgēsīmūs
80	LXXX	Ōctōgintā	Ōctōgēsīmūs
90	XC	Nōnāgintā	Nōnāgēsīmūs
100	C	Cēntum	Cēntēsīmūs
200	CC	Dŭcēntī, ē, ā	Dŭcēntēsīmūs
300	CCC	Trēcēntī, ē, ā	Trēcēntēsīmūs
400	CCCC	Quādrīngēntī, &c.	Quādrīngēntēsīmūs
500	D	Quīngēntī, &c.	Quīngēntēsīmūs
600	DC	Sēxcēntī	Sēxcēntēsīmūs
700	DCC	Sēptīngēntī	Sēptīngēntēsīmūs
800	DCCC	Ōctīngēntī	Ōctīngēntēsīmūs
900	DCCCC	Nōngēntī	Nōngēntēsīmūs
1000	CIO or M	Millē.	Millēsīmūs.

§ 23. COMPARISON.

There are three degrees of Comparison:—

- I. *The Positive*, which is the Adjective in its simple form and meaning: as, *dōctūs*, learned; *brēvis*, short.
- II. *The Comparative*, which denotes a higher degree of the quality signified: as, *dōctiōr*, more learned; *brēviōr*, shorter or more short.
- III. *The Superlative*, which denotes the highest degree of the quality: as, *dōctissimūs*, most learned; *brēvissimūs*, shortest, or most short.

The *Comparative* is formed from the first case of the Positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ōr*.

The *Superlative* is formed from the first case of the Positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimūs*: as—

Positive.		Compar.	Superlat.
<i>Dōctūs</i> (learned)	G. <i>dōctī</i>	<i>Dōctī-ōr</i>	<i>Dōctī-ssimūs</i>
<i>Brēvis</i> (short)	D. <i>brēvi</i>	<i>Brēvi-ōr</i>	<i>Brēvi-ssimūs</i>
<i>Fēlix</i> (happy)	D. <i>fēlici</i>	<i>Fēlici-ōr</i>	<i>Fēlici-ssimūs</i> .

Exceptions.

1. Adjectives ending in *-er* form their Superlative Degree from the Nominative case, by adding *-rimūs*: as—

Positive.		Compar.	Superlat.
<i>Pūlchēr</i> (fair)	G. <i>pūlchrī</i>	<i>Pūlchrīōr</i>	<i>Pūlchēr-rimūs</i>
<i>Cēlēr</i> (swift)	D. <i>cēlēri</i>	<i>Cēlēriōr</i>	<i>Cēlēr-rimūs</i> .
So <i>Vētūs</i> (old)	D. <i>vētēri</i>	<i>Vētēriōr</i>	<i>Vētēr-rimūs</i> .

2. The following form their Superlative in *-illimūs*—

<i>Fācīlis</i> , <i>difficīlis</i> ,	<i>Stimilis</i> , <i>disstimilis</i> ,
<i>Hūmīlis</i> , et <i>grācīlis</i> ,	<i>Sēpiūs</i> et <i>āgilis</i> .

3. Adjectives in *-dicūs*, *-ficūs*, *-volūs*, make *-ēntiōr* and *-ēntissimūs*, derived from Positives in *-dicēns*, *-ficēns*, *-volēns*: as—

<i>Mālēdicūs</i> , slanderous	<i>mālēdicēntiōr</i>	<i>mālēdicēntissimūs</i>
<i>Bēnēficūs</i> , beneficent	<i>bēnēficēntiōr</i>	<i>bēnēficēntissimūs</i>
<i>Bēnēvolūs</i> , benevolent	<i>bēnēvolēntiōr</i>	<i>bēnēvolēntissimūs</i> .

4. If the Positive has a vowel before *-us*, there are no proper Comparatives or Superlatives: but the Positive is used instead, with the Adverbs *māgis* (more) and *māximē* (most) prefixed: as, *dūbiūs* (doubtful), *māgis dūbiūs* (more doubtful), *māximē dūbiūs* (most doubtful).
5. (a.) Some words have no Comparative or Superlative, because their meaning does not admit degrees of comparison: as, *inōps*, penniless; *hōstīlis*, belonging to an enemy; and, *aurēūs*, golden.
- (b.) Some have no Comparative: as, *sācēr* (sacred), *sācērrimūs*. And some have no Superlative: as, *dōcīlis* (teachable), *dōcīlīor*.

6. The following are irregular—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Bōnūs</i> , good	<i>mēliōr</i> , better	<i>optīmūs</i> , best
<i>Mālūs</i> , bad	<i>pējōr</i> , worse	<i>pēssimūs</i> , worst
<i>Magnūs</i> , great	<i>mājōr</i> , greater	<i>māximūs</i> , greatest
<i>Pārvūs</i> , little	<i>mīnōr</i> , less	<i>mīnimūs</i> , least
<i>Multūs</i> , much	<i>plūs</i> , more	<i>plūrīmūs</i> , most.
<i>Divēs</i> , rich	<i>divitīor</i> or <i>ditīor</i>	<i>divitissimūs</i> or <i>ditissimūs</i>
<i>Nēquām</i> , wicked	<i>nēquior</i> , more wicked	<i>nēquissimūs</i> , most wicked
<i>Ēxtērnūs</i> , outward	<i>ēxtērior</i> , more outward	<i>ēxtremūs</i> and <i>ēxtimūs</i>
<i>Pōstērūs</i> , hindward	<i>pōstērior</i> , hinder	<i>pōstrēmūs</i> and <i>pōstīmūs</i>
<i>Infērūs</i> , low	<i>infērior</i> , lower	<i>infimūs</i> and <i>imūs</i>
<i>Sūpērūs</i> , high	<i>sūpērior</i> , higher	<i>sūprēmūs</i> and <i>sūmmūs</i>
<i>Juvēns</i> , young	<i>jūnior</i> , younger	(<i>nātū mīnīmūs</i> , youngest)
<i>Sēnēx</i> , old	<i>sēnior</i> , older	(<i>nātū māximūs</i> , oldest).

The following are formed from Prepositions—

(<i>Citrā</i> , on this side)	<i>Citīrior</i> , hither	<i>citīmūs</i> , most hither
(<i>Intrā</i> , within)	<i>Intīrior</i> , more inward	<i>intīmūs</i> , most inward
(<i>Ūtrā</i> , beyond)	<i>Ūtīrior</i> , further	<i>ūltīmūs</i> , last
(<i>Prā</i> , before)	<i>Prīor</i> , former	<i>primūs</i> , first
(<i>Prōpē</i> , near)	<i>Prōpīor</i> , nearer	<i>prōximūs</i> , next.

These three are formed otherwise—

(<i>Dē</i> , <i>dētērūs</i> , obsolete)	<i>dētērior</i> , worse	<i>dētērrimūs</i> , worst.
(<i>Pōtīs</i> , able)	<i>pōtīor</i> , better	<i>pōtissimūs</i> , most important
(<i>Ōcūs</i> , swift)	<i>ōctīor</i> , swifter	<i>ōcissimūs</i> , swiftest.

For comparison of Adverbs, see p. 104.

CHAPTER V.

§ 24. PRONOUNS.

PRONOUNS are used instead of Nouns, and therefore supply the places both of Substantives and Adjectives.

So that some are Substantival : as, *Ego*, I ; *quis* ? who ? Some are Adjectival : as, *meus*, mine ; *quantus*, as great as ; and some are used in both ways : as, *is*, he or that.

There are seven kinds of Pronouns, the right understanding of which is most important to a Latin scholar ; viz. : *Personal*, *Demonstrative*, *Relative*, *Interrogative*, *Indefinite*, *Possessive*, and *Negative*.

Personālīā ēt Reflēxīvum,
Dēmōnstrātīvā, Relātīvā,

Interrōgātīvā, Indēfīnītā,
Possessīvā, Negātīvā.

§ 25. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The Personal Pronouns are—

1. For the first Person, *Ēgō*, I.
2. For the second Person, *Tū*, Thou.
3. For the third Person, *Is*, he ; *ēā*, she ; *id*, it, is used ; and the Reflexive, *sūī*, of himself, herself, itself, and themselves.

Which are thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Ēgō, <i>I</i>	N.	Nōs, <i>we</i>
G.	Mēī, <i>of me</i>	G.	Nōstrūm or nōstrī, <i>of us</i>
D.	Mīhī, <i>to me</i> (mī, <i>poet.</i>)	D.	Nōbīs, <i>to us</i>
Acc.	Mē, <i>me</i>	Acc.	Nōs, <i>us</i>
Abl.	Mē, <i>from or by me</i>	Abl.	Nōbīs, <i>from us.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Tū, <i>thou</i>	N.	Vōs, <i>ye</i> [you]
G.	Tūī, <i>of you</i>	G.	Vēstrūm and vēstrī, <i>of</i>
D.	Tībī, <i>to you</i>	D.	Vōbīs, <i>to you</i>
Acc.	Tē, <i>you</i>	Acc.	Vōs, <i>you</i>
V.	Tū, <i>thou</i>	V.	Vōs, <i>ye</i>
Abl.	Tē, <i>from or by you</i>	Abl.	Vōbīs, <i>from or by you.</i>

N.	Is	ěā	īd	N.	Īi	ěā	ěā
G.		Ejūs		G.	Ēorum	ěārum	ěōrum
D.		Ēi		D.		Īis or Ēis	
Acc.	Ēum	ěam	īd	Acc.	Ēōs	ěās	ěā
Abl.	Ēō	ěā	ěō	Abl.		Īis or Ēis.	

Singular and Plural.

G.	Sūi, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves		
D.	Sībī, to himself	„	„
A.	Sē and sēsē, himself	„	„
Ab.	Sē and sēsē, by himself	„	„

Obs. Sūi is called reflexive, because it reflects upon, or refers back to, the subject or the chief thing of the sentence; and is generally used where 'self,' in English, if inserted, would make sense.

§ 26. II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The chief Demonstrative Pronouns are—

1. *Hīc*, this

Is, that

Illē, that there, yon.

Istē, that near you, that of yours

Ipsē, self

Idem, the same.

2. *Aliūs*, another, of several; and

Alter, the other, of two.

They are thus declined:—

1.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
N.	Hīc	hēc	hōc	N.	Hī	hē	hēc
G.		Hūjūs		G.	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.		Huīc		D.		Hīs	
A.	Hūnc	hānc	hōc	A.	Hōs	hās	hēc
Ab.	Hōc	hēc	hōc	Ab.		His.	

2.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Illē</i>	<i>illā illū</i>	N.	<i>Illī illā illā</i>	
G.	<i>Illius</i>		G.	<i>Illorum illarum illorum</i>	
D.	<i>Illī</i>		D.	<i>Illis</i>	
A.	<i>Illum illam illud</i>		A.	<i>Illōs illās illā</i>	
Ab.	<i>Illō illā illō</i>		Ab.	<i>Illis.</i>	

In like manner are declined *istē*, and *ipsē*, except that *ipsē* makes *ipsum* in the Neuter Gender of the Nominative and Accusative cases singular.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Idem</i>	<i>ēdem idem</i>	N.	<i>Idem ēdem ēdem</i>	
G.	<i>Ejusdem</i>		G.	<i>Ēorūn- ēarūdem ēorūdem</i>	
D.	<i>Ēidem</i>		D.	<i>Idem or ēidem</i>	
A.	<i>Ēundem ēandem idem</i>		A.	<i>Ēōdem ēādem ēādem</i>	
Ab.	<i>Ēōdem ēādem ēōdem</i>		Ab.	<i>Idem or ēidem.</i>	

3.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Āliūs</i>	<i>āliū</i>	N.	<i>Ālīī</i>	<i>āliā</i>
G.	<i>Āliūs</i>		G.	<i>Āliōrum āliārum āliōrum</i>	
D.	<i>Ālīī</i>		D.	<i>Āliis</i>	
A.	<i>Ālium āliam āliud</i>		A.	<i>Āliōs āliās āliā</i>	
Ab.	<i>Āliō āliā āliō</i>		Ab.	<i>Āliis.</i>	

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Altēr</i>	<i>āltērā</i>	N.	<i>Ātēri</i>	<i>āltērā</i>
G.	<i>Altēriūs</i>		G.	<i>Altēr- āltērārum āltērōrum</i>	
D.	<i>Altēri</i>		D.	<i>ōrum</i>	
A.	<i>Altērum āltēram āltērum</i>		A.	<i>Altēris</i>	
Ab.	<i>Altēro āltērā āltērō</i>		A.	<i>Altērōs āltērās āltērā</i>	
			Ab.	<i>Altēris.</i>	

Obs. The difference between *hic*, *is*, *istē*, *illē*, and *ipsē*, is as follows:—*Is* is both a Personal Pronoun and a weak Demonstrative, and is used to express *that* which has been mentioned before, or is implied in the relative *qui*.

Hic denotes *this* which is near the speaker, and is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person.

Istē denotes *that* which is near you, being the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and is often used in a contemptuous sense.

Illē denotes *that* which is not close to or nearly connected with the

speaker or the person addressed, and is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person. It is also emphatic, and generally used in a good sense.

Ipsē is a reflexive answering to *sui*, as *ille* to *is* and *iste* to *tu*. But it came also to be used with all persons.

§ 27. III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The chief Relative Pronouns are—

<i>Quī</i> , who or which,	used in all cases.
<i>Quālis</i> , such-as,	used for quality.
<i>Quāntūs</i> , as-great-as,	used for quantity.
<i>Quōt</i> , as-many-as,	used for number.
<i>Quisquīs</i> , whosoever,	generally used as a Substantive.
<i>Quicūquē</i> , whosoever,	generally used as an Adjective.

They are thus declined :—

(1.)

Singular.

N.	Quī	quæ	quōd
G.		Cūjūs	
D.		Cuī	
A.	Quem	quam	quōd
Ab.	Quō	quâ	quō, or
	Quī	quī	quī

Plural.

N.	Quī	quæ	quæ
G.	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	Quībūs or quēis or quīs		
A.	Quōs	quās	quæ
Ab.	Quībūs or quēis or quīs.		

NOTE.—*Quēis* and *quīs* are ancient forms, and are rarely used in prose. The ancient ablat. *quī* is also rare.

(2.) *Quālis* and *quāntūs* are declined like *tristis* and *bōnūs*, *quōt* is undeclined, and *quicūquē* is declined like *qui*, only with the addition of *-cūquē* to each case: as—

N.	Quicūquē	quæcūquē	quōdcūquē
G.		Cūjūscūquē, &c.	

(3.)

Singular.

N.	Quisquīs	quidquid or quicquid
A.	Quemquem	quidquid or quicquid
Ab.	Quōquō	quāquā (rare) quōquō.

Plural.

N.	Quīquī	Ab. Quībūsquībūs
----	--------	------------------

Obs. All Relatives begin with *qu*.

§ 28. IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Interrogative Pronouns are Substantival and Adjectival.

1. The chief Substantival Interrogatives are—

Quis? Who? or what? used in all cases.

Ūtēr? whether of the two? used also in double questions.

2. The chief Adjectival are—

Quī? who? or what? used in all cases.

Quālis? of what sort? used for quality.

Quāntūs? how great? used for quantity.

Quōtūs? how many? *Sing.*

Quōt? how many? *Plur.*

} used for number.

Of these, it is unnecessary to decline more than *quis* and *ūtēr*.

Singular.

N.	Quis	quæ	quid
G.		Cūjūs	
D.		Cuī	
A.	Quem	quam	quid
Ab.	Quō	quā	quō, or
	quī	quī	quī
	&c., like Quī.		

Plural.

N.	Ūtēr	ūtṛā	ūtṛum
G.		Ūtrīūs	
D.		Ūtrī	
A.	Ūtrum	ūtṛam	ūtṛum
Ab.	Ūtrō	ūtṛā	ūtṛō
	&c., like Ōlṛēr.		

§ 29. V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The chief Indefinite Pronouns are—

Quis, any—

Quīdam, a certain one, known.

Alīquīs, some one, unknown.

Ūllūs, any one at all.

Quisquē, each.

Quis is thus declined—

Singular.

N.	Quis	quā	quid
G.		Cujūs	
D.		Cui	
A.	Quem	quam	quid
Ab.	Quō	quā	quō

Plural.

N.	Qui	quæ	quæ
G.	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	Quibūs or quēis or quīs		
A.	Quōs	quās	quæ
Ab.	Quibūs or quēis or quīs.		

Obs. The compounds of *Qui* are declined thus—

N.	Quidam	quædam	quoddam or quiddam
G.		Cujusdam, &c.	

§ 30. VI. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The Possessive Pronouns are as follows :—

1. Of the First Person: *mēūs*, mine, Sing.; *nōstēr*, ours, Plur. *Nōstrās*, of our country.
2. Of the Second Person: *tūūs*, thine, Sing.; *vēstēr*, yours, Plur. *Vēstrās*, of your country.
3. Of the Third Person: *sūūs*, his own, Sing., and Plur. and Reflexive. In ordinary cases the possession is expressed by the possessive genitive, *ējūs*, *illīūs*, &c. &c.
4. For Others: *altēnūs*, belonging to another man.
5. For the Relative: *cujūs*, whose. *Cujās*, of whose country.

Obs. The Possessive Pronouns are declined like *bōnūs*, *nīgēr*, and *fēlix* respectively; except that *mēūs* makes *mī* in the Vocative Singular, Masculine Gender. *Nōstrās* makes *nostrātis*; so *vēstrās* and *cujās*.

§ 31. VII. NEGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Negative Pronouns are—

Nūllūs,* none, declined like *ūnūs*, Adjective.

Nēmō,† no man, Substantive.

Neūtēr,‡ neither of the two, declined like *ūtēr*, Adjective.

Nihīl, *nīl*, § nothing, undeclined, Substantive.

Obs. 1. The Genitive and Ablative of *nēmō* are rarely used; *nūllīūs* and *nūllō* are used instead.

Obs. 2. The following words are declined like *ūnūs*, with *īūs* in the genitive, and *ī* in the dative—

Hēc īūs dānt in gēnītvō,

Sōlūs, *tōtūs*, *āltūs*, *ūllūs*,

Ēt, sīcūt *ūnūs*, ī dātīvō:—

Ūtēr, *āltēr*, *neūtēr*, *nūllūs*.

CHAPTER VI.

§ 33. VERBS.

THERE are two kinds of Verbs—

1. Personal, || or those which have three Persons in each number, and a nominative case expressed or understood: as—

Ēgō āmō, I love

Nōs āmāmūs, we love

Tū āmās, Thou lovest

Vōs āmātīs, ye love

Pūēr āmāt, The boy loves

Āmānt, they love.

2. Impersonal, ¶ or those which have only the third Person Singular, and no nominative case: as, *tēdēt*, it irketh; *ōpōrtēt*, it behoveth; *cūrrītūr*, it is run.

Verbs have two Voices**—

1. The Active (or doing) Voice: †† as, *āmō*, I love.
2. The Passive (suffering or receiving) Voice: ‡‡ as, *āmōr*, I am loved.

* *Nē* and *āllūs*.

† *Nē* and *homo*.

‡ *Nē* and *ūtēr*.

§ *Nē* and *āllūs*.

|| *Pērsōnālīs*.

¶ *Impērsōnālīs*.

** *Voces*.

†† From *āgō*, to do, *actūs*.

‡‡ From *pāōr*, *pāōrīs*, to suffer.

Verbs of the Active Voice are either—

1. Transitive, expressing an incomplete action, where the action *passes on** to a noun following, which is necessary to complete the meaning: as, *āmō pātrēm*; I love my father; *vērā lōquōr*, I speak the truth; *vēnērōr Dēum*, I worship God.

Where the meanings of *āmō*, *lōquōr*, and *vēnērōr* are incomplete without a noun in each case to express what is loved, spoken, or worshipped.

2. Or else Intransitive or Neuter, expressing a complete action or state, where the action does not pass on to, or require, a noun following: as, *dōrmīō*, I sleep; *cūrrō*, I run; *stō*, I stand.

Neuter Verbs Active are only used Impersonally in the Passive.

Some Verbs are chiefly conjugated as Passives, but have an Active meaning; and are called *Deponents*, because they lay aside† their Passive meaning; of which some are Transitives, as *lōquōr*, I speak; and some are neuter, as *mōriōr*, I die.

Five Verbs of the Active Voice take a Passive form in the Perfect and the tenses derived from it; and are therefore called Neuter-Passives: viz.—

Aūdēō. aūsūs sum, I dare.

Gaūdēō. gāvisūs sum, I rejoice.

Fidēō. fisūs sum, I trust.

Sōlēō. solūtūs sum, I am accustomed.

Fiō. fāctūs sum, I become.

Fidēō, Fiō, Aūdēō,

Sōlēō, et Gaūdēō.

Five Verbs are called Neutral-Passives, because they have an Active form, but a Passive sense; viz.—

Ēxulō, I am banished

Vāpūlō, I am beaten

Fiō, I am made, or become

Vēnēō, I am sold.

Līcēō, I am valued

Līcēō, Fiō, Ēxulō,

Vēnēō, et Vāpūlō.

* *Trānsit.*

† *Dēpōnānt.*

§ 34. MOODS AND TENSES.

Verbs are used to state things in different ways, and with reference to different times.

These ways of stating things are called Moods;* and the times are expressed by Tenses.†

I. There are four Moods, three with Numbers and Persons, and one without; viz.—

1. The Indicative‡ or declarative mood, which states or asks things positively : as, *āmō*, I love; *āmās-nē* ? dost thou love ?
2. The Imperative,§ which commands, or entreats : as, *hūc vēnī!* come hither ! *pārcē mīhī!* spare me !
3. The Conjunctive,|| or suppositive Mood, which is used in conjunction with others, and is employed in three ways—
 - A. As a Potential, when it expresses power,¶ disposition, or likelihood : as, *āmēm*, I may love.
 - B. As an Optative, when it expresses a wish:** as, *ūtīnām sis fēlix!* O that you may be happy !
 - C. As a Subjunctive, when it is subjoined to another verb : as, *nēsciō quālis sit*, I knew not what manner of man he is.
4. The Infinitive †† or Indefinite Mood, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb, without Number or Person : as, *āmārē*, to love or loving; *āmāvissē*, to have loved or having loved.

II. Time is Present, Past, or Future. Therefore there are three classes of Tenses; viz.—

1. Present, of two kinds; viz.—

* *Mōdi.*
| *Cōnjunctivūs.*

† *Tēpōrē.*
‡ *Pōtēntiā.*

‡ *Indicativūs.*
** *Optāt.*

§ *Impēratiivūs.*
†† *Infinitivūs.*

A. Speaking of a thing *now doing or being* : as, *āmō*, I love, or am loving ; *pōšsum*, I am able.

B. The Absolute Perfect, or Past Present, speaking of a thing *now done or been* : as, *āmāvi*, I have loved, * *pōtūi*, I have been able,†

2. Past of three kinds ; viz.—

A. The Aorist Perfect, or simple past, speaking of a thing *simply done or been* : as, *āmāvi*, I loved ; *pōtūi*, I was able.

This corresponds to the English Past : as, *loved*, *saw*, *ran*, *stood*, *drank*, &c.

B. The Imperfect, or Present Past, speaking of a thing *going on or present at some past time* : as, *āmābam*, I was (then) loving ; *pōtēram*, I was (then) being able.

C. The Præterpluperfect, or Past Past, speaking of a thing *done or been before some past time* : as, *āmāvēram*, I had (then) loved ; *pōtūēram*, I had (then) been able.

3. Future, of two kinds ; viz.—

A. The First Future, or simple Future, speaking of a thing *to be done or be afterwards* : as, *āmābō*, I shall or will love ; *pōtērō*, I shall or will be able.

B. The Second Future, or Past Future, speaking of a thing that *will have been done or happened at some future time* : as, *āmāvērō*, I shall (then) have loved ; *pōtūēro*, I shall (then) have been able.

Of these seven the Absolute and Aorist Perfects are expressed by one Latin Form.

* *i. e.* I am now in a position of having loved. † *i. e.* I am now one who has been able.

So that there are six tenses —

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. Present | 3. Perfect | 5. First Future |
| 2. Imperfect | 4. Pluperfect | 6. Second Future.* |

Obs. 1. All the Tenses are found in the Indicative Mood.

Obs. 2. The Present alone occurs in the Imperative.

Obs. 3. There is no Future Conjunctive, its place being supplied by the other tenses, and the periphrastic conjugation in *-rus*. See pp. 71, 72, 131.

Obs. 4. There are three tenses in the Infinitive, which serve for all purposes.

§ 35. DECLENSION OF THE INFINITIVE.

Gerunds and Supines.

Besides the ordinary use of the Infinitive Mood, as part of the verb, it is also employed as a Substantive, with Gerunds for its cases.

Thus—

	Inf.	Gerunds.	
N.	Amārē		loving
G.		Amandī	of loving
D.		Amandō	for loving
A.	Amare	Amandum	loving
Ab.		Amandō	by loving.

1. There are therefore three Gerunds, in *dī*, *do*, and *dum*.
2. Besides these there are two Supines, which also serve as cases of the Infinitive, but in a special manner.

- (1.) One ends in *um* with an Active signification : as, *āmātum*, to love, or for the purpose of loving.

This Supine resembles an Accusative.

- (2.) The other ends in *ū* with a Passive signification : as, *āmātū*, to be loved, or in or for being loved.

This Supine is an Ablative (or Dative).

* 1. *Præsens.* 2. *Præteritum Imperfectum* or *Imperfectum.*
 3. (a) *Præteritum Perfectum Aoristum*, or (b) *Præteritum Perfectum Absolutum*; or (a) *Perfectum Aoristum*, or (b) *Perfectum Absolutum.*
 4. *Præteritum Plusquam Perfectum*, or *Plusquam perfectum.*
 5. *Futurum*, or *Futurum Primum.*
 6. *Futurum Exactum*, or *Futurum Secundum.*

§ 36. PARTICIPLES.

Participles are so called because they take part* of the properties of Verbs, as Tense and Governing Power; and part of the properties of Adjectives, as case and gender.

Latin Verbs have usually only two Participles in the Active and two in the Passive.

I. ACTIVE.

1. Present, ending in *ans* or *ens*: as, *āmāns*, loving.
2. Future in *-rus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing a thing: as, *āmātūrus*, about to love, or intending to love.

II. PASSIVE.

1. One of the Preter-perfect Tense: as, *āmātūs*, having been loved; *lētūs*, having been read.
2. The Participle in *-dus*: as, *āmāndūs*, to be loved, or being loved.

Obs. 1. All Participles are declined like Adjectives.

Obs. 2. Neuter Verbs Active have only the Neuter Gender of the Nominative or Accusative Singular of Participles in *-tus* and *-dus*, which are used impersonally.

§ 37. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

There are Four Conjugations of Latin Verbs.

1. The First Conjugation has *ā* long before *rē*: as, *āmārē* (Active), *hōrtārē* (Deponent) from *hōrtōr*.
2. The Second has *ē* long before *rē*: as, *mōnērē* from *mōnēō*, *vērērē*, from *vērēōr*.
3. The Third has *ē* short before *rē*: as, *rēgērē* from *rēgō*, *lābērē* from *lābōr*.

* *Pārtēm cāpiūnt.*

4. The Fourth has *i* long before *rē*: as, *aūdīrē*, from *aūdīō*,
pārtīrē from *pārtīōr*.

NOTE.—Three of these Conjugations are properly Vowel Conjugations, with the respective characteristics *A* (1), *E* (2), and *I* (4). Of these *I* is retained throughout, as *aūdīō*, *aūdis*, &c.; *A* is usually retained, but dropped before *o*, as *āmō*, *āmās*, &c.; and *E*, as in the Third Declension, is occasionally changed into *I*, and dropped before *U*: as, *mōnēō*, *mōnēs*, *mōnūi*, &c.; *mōnītum*, &c. The Third is the Consonantal Conjugation, consisting of (§ 2, p. 2)—

I. MUTE VERBS.

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. Labial Verbs, | as (B) <i>Scribō</i> , I write.
(P) <i>Cārpō</i> , I pluck. |
| 2. Guttural Verbs, | as (C) <i>Dicō</i> , I speak.
(Qu) <i>Cōquō</i> , I cook.
(G) <i>Rēgō</i> , I rule.
(H) <i>Vehō</i> , I carry. |
| 3. Dental Verbs, | as (D) <i>Lūdō</i> , I play.
(T) <i>Mittō</i> , I send. |

II. LIQUID VERBS.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| L | as . <i>Cōlō</i> , I till. |
| M | <i>Gēmō</i> , I groan. |
| N | <i>Cānō</i> , I sing. |
| R | <i>Gērō</i> , I carry. |

III. SEMICONSONANTAL VERBS.

- (I inserted) as *Faciō*, I make
(U or Y) as *Ruō*, I fall.
Solvō, I loosen.

IV. EXTRANEOUS VERBS.

- (SC), as *Discō*, I learn.
(S), as *Mittō*, I send for.

In order to conjugate a Latin Verb, it is necessary to know—

1. The Present Indicative Active, 1st Person.
2. The Perfect Indicative Active, 1st Person.
3. The Present Infinitive Active.
4. The Supine in *um*.

For the other Tenses may be derived from these.

Verbs are conjugated in full as follows:—

ACTIVE VOICE.

	Conjug. 1.	Conjug. 2.	Conjug. 3.	Conjug. 4.
Pres. Ind. 1st P.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Aūdīō
“ 2nd P.	Āmās	Mōnēs	Rēgis	Aūdis
Perfect	Āmāvī	Mōnūī	Rēxī	Aūdīvī
Infinitive	Āmārē	Mōnērē	Rēgērē	Aūdīrē
Gerund in <i>di</i>	Āmāndī	Mōnēndī	Rēgēndī	Aūdīēndī
“ <i>do</i>	Āmāndō	Mōnēndō	Rēgēndō	Aūdīēndō
“ <i>dum</i>	Āmāndum	Mōnēndum	Rēgēndum	Aūdīēndum
Supine in <i>um</i>	Āmātum	Mōnītum	Rēctum	Aūdītum
“ <i>u</i>	Āmātū	Mōnītū	Rēctū	Aūdītū
Participle Pres.	Āmāns	Mōnēns	Rēgēns	Aūdīēns
“ Fut. in <i>rus</i>	Āmātūrus.	Mōnītūrus.	Rēctūrus.	Aūdītūrus.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	Conjug. 1.	Conjug. 2.	Conjug. 3.	Conjug. 4.
Pres. Ind. 1st P.	Āmōr	Mōnēōr	Rēgōr	Aūdīōr
“ 2nd P.	Āmāris	Mōnēris	Rēgēris	Aūdīris
	<i>vēl</i> Āmārē	<i>vēl</i> Mōnērē	<i>vēl</i> Rēgērē	<i>vēl</i> Aūdīrē
Perfect	Āmātūs sum	Mōnītūs sum	Rēctūs sum	Aūdītūs sum
	<i>vēl</i> Fūī	<i>vēl</i> Fūī	<i>vēl</i> Fūī	<i>vēl</i> Fūī
Infinitive	Āmārī	Mōnērī	Rēgī	Aūdīrī
Participle Perf.	Āmātūs	Mōnītūs	Rēctūs	Aūdītūs
“ in <i>du</i>	Āmāndūs.	Mōnēndūs.	Rēgēndūs.	Aūdīēndūs.

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

CONJUG. I.	CONJUG. II.	CONJUG. III.
Like <i>Āmō</i> .	Like <i>Mōnēō</i> .	Like <i>Rēgō</i> .
<i>Ārō</i> , I plough	<i>Dēbēō</i> , I owe	<i>Cingō</i> , I gird
<i>Cāntō</i> , I sing	<i>Exērcēō</i> , I exercise	<i>Cōquō</i> , I cook
<i>Cūrō</i> , I care for	<i>Hābēō</i> , I have	<i>Jūngō</i> , I join
<i>Dōnō</i> , I give	<i>Mērrēō</i> , I deserve	<i>Dicō</i> , I say
<i>Lōcō</i> , I place	<i>Præbēō</i> , I afford	<i>Dūcō</i> , I lead
<i>Ōptō</i> , I wish	<i>Prōhibēō</i> , I forbid	<i>Sūgō</i> , I suck
<i>Rōgō</i> , I ask	<i>Tācēō</i> , I am silent	<i>Tēgō</i> , I cover
<i>Vōcō</i> , I call	<i>Tērrēō</i> , I frighten	<i>Trāhō</i> , I draw
<i>Ædificō</i> , I build.	<i>Ādhībēō</i> , I use.	<i>Vēhō</i> , I carry.

CONJUG. IV.

Like *Aūdīō*.

<i>Cūstōdītō</i> , I guard	<i>Mollītō</i> , I soften	<i>Ōbedītō</i> , I obey
<i>Finītō</i> , I finish	<i>Mūnītō</i> , I fortify	<i>Pūnītō</i> , I punish
<i>Impēdītō</i> , I hinder	<i>Nūtrītō</i> , I nourish	<i>Vēstītō</i> , I clothe.

(For the rules of Conjugation, see § 41, p. 73.)

§ 38. THE AUXILIARY

Sum, es, fui,

	Indicative Mood.	Imperative Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>Sing.</i> Sum, <i>I am</i> Ēs, <i>Thou art</i> Ēst, <i>He is</i> <i>Plur.</i> Sūmūs, <i>We are</i> Ēstis, <i>Ye are</i> Sūnt, <i>They are.</i>	Ēs, Ēstō, <i>Be thou</i> Ēstō, <i>Let him</i> <i>be</i> Ēstē, Ēstōtē, <i>Be ye</i> Sūntō, <i>Let</i> <i>them be.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>Sing.</i> Ēram, <i>I was being</i> Ērās, <i>Thou wast being</i> Ērāt, <i>He was being</i> <i>Plur.</i> Ērāmūs, <i>We were being</i> Ērātis, <i>Ye were being</i> Ērānt, <i>They were being</i>	
Perfect. 1 Aorist. 2 Absolute.	<i>Sing.</i> Fūi, <i>I was, or have been</i> Fūisti, <i>Thou wast, or hast been</i> Fūit, <i>He was, or has been</i> <i>Plur.</i> Fūimūs, <i>We were, or have been</i> Fūistis, <i>Ye were, or have been [been.</i> Fūerunt vel fūerē, <i>They were, or have</i>	
Pluperfect.	<i>Sing.</i> Fūeram, <i>I had been</i> Fūerās, <i>Thou hadst been</i> Fūerāt, <i>He had been</i> <i>Plur.</i> Fūerāmūs, <i>We had been</i> Fūerātis, <i>Ye had been</i> Fūerānt, <i>They had been.</i>	
First Future.	<i>Sing.</i> Ērō, <i>I shall, or will be</i> Ēris, <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be</i> Ērit, <i>He shall, or will be</i> <i>Plur.</i> Ērimūs, <i>We shall, or will be</i> Ēritis, <i>Ye shall, or will be</i> Ērunt, <i>They shall, or will be.</i>	
Second Future.	<i>Sing.</i> Fūerō, <i>I shall, or will have been</i> Fūeris, <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been</i> Fūerit, <i>He shall, or will have been</i> <i>Plur.</i> Fūerimūs, <i>We shall, or will have been</i> Fūeritis, <i>Ye shall, or will have been</i> Fūerint, <i>They shall, or will have been.</i>	

VERB *Sum*, I am.

esse, *futurus*.

Conjunctive Mood.	Infinitive Mood Gerunds and Supines.	Participles.
<i>Sim, I may, or should be</i> <i>Sis, Thou mayst, or shouldst be</i> <i>Sit, He may, or should be</i> <i>Simus, We may, or should be</i> <i>Sitis, Ye may, or should be</i> <i>Sint, They may, or should be.</i>	<i>Ēssē, To be.</i>	<i>(Ens)</i>
<i>Ēssem or Fōrem, I might, or should be</i> <i>Ēssēs or Fōrēs, Thou mightst, or shouldst be</i> <i>Ēssēt or Fōrēt, He might, or should be</i> <i>Ēssēmūs or Fōrēmūs, We might, or should be</i> <i>Ēssētīs or Fōrētīs, Ye might, or should be</i> <i>Ēssēnt or Fōrēnt, They might, or should be.</i>		
<i>Fūērim, I may, or should have been</i> <i>Fūērīs, Thou mayst, or shouldst have been</i> <i>Fūērīt, He may, or should have been</i> <i>Fūērīmūs, We may, or should have been</i> <i>Fūērītīs, Ye may, or should have been</i> <i>Fūērīnt, They may, or should have been.</i>	<i>Fūissē, To have been.</i>	
<i>Fūissem, I might, or should have been</i> <i>Fūissēs, Thou mightst, or shouldst have been</i> <i>Fūissēt, He might, or should have been</i> <i>Fūissēmūs, We might, or should have been</i> <i>Fūissētīs, Ye might, or should have been</i> <i>Fūissēnt, They might, or should have been.</i>		
	<i>Fōrē,</i> <i>or</i> <i>Fūtū-</i> <i>rum</i> <i>ēssē,</i>	<i>To be</i> <i>about</i> <i>to be</i>
		<i>Fūūrūs,</i> <i>About</i> <i>to be.</i>

Obs. Like *Sum* are conjugated its compounds—

*Āsum**Intersum**Sūsum**Ādsum**Ōsum**Sūp̄sum**D̄sum**Pr̄sum**Insum**Pr̄sum*For *Pōssum*, see below, § 43.

Of these, only *Āsum* *Pr̄sum* and *Pōssum* have Present Participles; viz., *Āsēns*, *Pr̄sēns*, and *Pōtēns*.

Prosum takes *d* before *e*: as, *Pr̄sum*, *pr̄dēs*, *pr̄dēt*, *pr̄sūmū*, *pr̄dētis*, *pr̄sūnt*.

§ 39. CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

First Conjugation (A), *Āmō*, I love.

Second Conjugation (E), *Mōnēō*, I advise.

Third Conjugation (consonantal), *Rēgō*, I rule.

Fourth Conjugation (I), *Aūdīō*, I hear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*Do*, *am*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Ām-ō</i>	<i>I love, or am loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ās</i>	<i>thou lovest, or art loving</i>
	<i>Ām-āt</i>	<i>he loves, or is loving</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Ām-āmūs</i>	<i>We love, or are loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ātis</i>	<i>ye love, or are loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ant</i>	<i>they love, or are loving.</i>

2. Imperfect—*Was* or *used to*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Ām-ābam</i>	<i>I was loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ābās</i>	<i>thou wast loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ābāt</i>	<i>he was loving</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Ām-ābāmūs</i>	<i>We were loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ābātis</i>	<i>ye were loving</i>
	<i>Ām-ābant</i>	<i>they were loving.</i>

3. Perfect Tense (1) Absolute Perfect—*Have*.

(2) Aorist Perfect—*Did*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-āvī	<i>I loved, or have loved</i>
	Ām-āvistī	<i>thou lovedst, or hast loved</i>
	Ām-āvīt	<i>he loved, or has loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-āvimās	<i>We loved, or have loved</i>
	Ām-āvistīs	<i>ye loved, or have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērunt vel -āvērē	<i>they loved, or have loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect—*Had*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-āvēram	<i>I had loved</i>
	Ām-āvērās	<i>thou hadst loved</i>
	Ām-āvērāt	<i>he had loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-āvērāmūs	<i>We had loved</i>
	Ām-āvērātīs	<i>ye had loved</i>
	Ām-āvērānt	<i>they had loved.</i>

5. First Future—*Shall, will*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ābō	<i>I shall, or will love</i>
	Ām-ābīs	<i>thou shalt, or wilt love</i>
	Ām-ābīt	<i>he shall, or will love</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ābīmūs	<i>We shall, or will love</i>
	Ām-ābītīs	<i>ye shall, or will love</i>
	Ām-ābūnt	<i>they shall, or will love.</i>

6. Second Future—*Shall have, will have*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-āvērō	<i>I shall have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērīs	<i>thou shalt have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērīt	<i>he shall have loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-āvērimūs	<i>We shall have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērītīs	<i>ye shall have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērint	<i>they shall have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ā, ām-ātō	<i>Love, or love thou</i>
	Ām-ātō	<i>Let him love</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ātē, ām-ātōtē	<i>Love, or love ye</i>
	Ām-āntō	<i>Let them love.</i>

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*May or should.**

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-em	<i>I may, or should love</i>
	Ām-ēs	<i>thou mayst, or shouldst love</i>
	Ām-ēt	<i>he may, or should love</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ēmūs	<i>We may, or should love</i>
	Ām-ētīs	<i>ye may, or should love</i>
	Ām-ēnt	<i>they may, or should love.</i>

2. Imperfect—*Might or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ārem	<i>I might, or should love</i>
	Ām-ārēs	<i>thou mightst, or shouldst love</i>
	Ām-ārēt	<i>he might, or should love</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ārēmūs	<i>We might, or should love</i>
	Ām-ārētīs	<i>ye might, or should love</i>
	Ām-ārēnt	<i>they might, or should love.</i>

3. Perfect Tense—*May have or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-āvērīm	<i>I may have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērīs	<i>thou mayst have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērīt	<i>he may have loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-āvērīmūs	<i>We may have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērītīs	<i>ye may have loved</i>
	Ām-āvērīnt	<i>they may have loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense—*Might have or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-āvīsem	<i>I might have loved</i>
	Ām-āvissēs	<i>thou mightst have loved</i>
	Ām-āvissēt	<i>he might have loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-āvissēmūs	<i>We might have loved</i>
	Ām-āvissētīs	<i>ye might have loved</i>
	Ām-āvissēnt	<i>they might have loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect Tense.

Ām-ārē	<i>to love.</i>
--------	-----------------

* See p. 72.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

Ām-āvissē *to have loved.*

Future.

Ām-ātūrum ēssē *to be about to love.*

Gerunds.

Ām-āndī *of loving*
 Ām-āndō *in loving*
 Ām-āndum *to love.*

Supines.

Active. *Passive.*
 Ām-ātum, *to love* Ām-ātū, *to be loved.*

Participles.

Present Tense. Future *in rus.*

Singular.

N. V. Ām-āns, *loving* N. V. Ām-ātūrūs, a, um,
 G. Āmāntīs, &c. *about to love.*
 Like *Ingens*, Like *Bonus*.

SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*Do, am.*

I advise, am advising, or do advise, &c.

II.

III.

IV.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Mōnēō	Rēgō	Aūdīō
	2. Mōnēs	Rēgis	Aūdis
	3. Mōnēt	Rēgit	Aūdit
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Mōnēmūs	Rēgīmūs	Aūdīmūs
	2. Mōnētīs	Rēgītīs	Aūditīs
	3. Mōnēnt	Rēgūnt	Aūdīūnt.

2. Imperfect Tense—*Was or used to.*

I was advising or used to advise, &c.

Singular.

1. Mōnēbam	Rēgēbam	Aūdīēbam
2. Mōnēbās	Rēgēbās	Aūdīēbās
3. Mōnēbāt	Rēgēbāt	Aūdīēbāt

Plural.

II.

1. Mōnēbāmūs
2. Mōnēbātīs
3. Mōnēbānt.

III.

- Rēgēbāmūs
- Rēgēbātīs
- Rēgēbānt.

IV.

- Aūdīēbāmūs
- Aūdīēbātīs
- Aūdīēbānt.

3. Perfect Tense, (1) Absolute Perfect—*Have.**I have advised, &c.*(2) Aorist Perfect—*Did.**I advised or did advise, &c.**Singular.*

1. Mōnūī
2. Mōnūīstī
3. Mōnūīt

- Rēxī
- Rēxīstī
- Rēxīt

- Aūdīvī
- Aūdīvīstī
- Aūdīvīt

Plural.

1. Mōnūīmūs
2. Mōnūīstīs
3. Mōnūērūnt
vel
Mōnūērē.

- Rēxīmūs
- Rēxīstīs
- Rēxērūnt
vel
Rēxērē.

- Aūdīvīmūs
- Aūdīvīstīs
- Aūdīvērūnt
vel
Aūdīvērē.

4. Pluperfect—*Had.**I had advised, &c.**Singular.*

1. Mōnūēram
2. Mōnūērās
3. Mōnūērāt

- Rēxēram
- Rēxērās
- Rēxērāt

- Aūdīvēram
- Aūdīvērās
- Aūdīvērāt

Plural.

1. Mōnūērāmūs
2. Mōnūērātīs
3. Mōnūērānt.

- Rēxērāmūs
- Rēxērātīs
- Rēxērānt.

- Aūdīvērāmūs
- Aūdīvērātīs
- Aūdīvērānt.

5. First Future—*Shall or will.**I shall or will advise, &c.**Singular.*

II.	III.	IV.
1. Mōnēbō	Rēgam	Aūdīam
2. Mōnēbīs	Rēgēs	Aūdīēs
3. Mōnēbīt	Rēgēt	Aūdīēt

Plural.

1. Mōnēbīmūs	Rēgēmūs	Aūdīēmūs
2. Mōnēbītīs	Rēgētīs	Aūdīētīs
3. Mōnēbūnt.	Rēgēnt.	Aūdīēnt.

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect—*Shall have, will have.**I shall or will have advised, &c.**Singular.*

1. Mōnūērō	Rēxērō	Aūdīvērō
2. Mōnūērīs	Rēxērīs	Aūdīvērīs
3. Mōnūērīt	Rēxērīt	Aūdīvērīt

Plural.

1. Mōnūērīmūs	Rēxērīmūs	Aūdīvērīmūs
2. Mōnūērītīs	Rēxērītīs	Aūdīvērītīs
3. Mōnūērīnt.	Rēxērīnt.	Aūdīvērīnt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Advise or advise thou ; let him advise, &c.**Singular.*

2. Mōnē, Mōnētō	Rēgē, Rēgītō	Aūdī, Aūdītō
3. Mōnētō	Rēgītō	Aūdītō

Plural.

2. Mōnētē, Mōnētōtē	Rēgītē, Rēgītōtē	Aūdītē, Aūdītōtē
3. Mōnēntō.	Rēgūntō.	Aūdīūntō.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*May, should.**I may or should advise, &c.**Singular.*

II	III.	IV.
1. Mōnēam	Rēgam	Aūdīam
2. Mōnēās	Rēgās	Aūdīās
3. Mōnēāt	Rēgāt	Aūdīāt

Plural.

1. Mōnēāmūs	Rēgāmūs	Aūdīāmūs
2. Mōnēātīs	Rēgātīs	Aūdīātīs
3. Mōnēānt.	Rēgānt.	Aūdīānt.

2. Imperfect Tense—*Might, should.**I might or should advise, &c.**Singular.*

1. Mōnērem	Rēgērem	Aūdīrem
2. Mōnērēs	Rēgērēs	Aūdīrēs
3. Mōnērēt	Rēgērēt	Aūdīrēt

Plural.

1. Mōnērēmūs	Rēgērēmūs	Aūdīrēmūs
2. Mōnērētīs	Rēgērētīs	Aūdīrētīs
3. Mōnērēnt.	Rēgērēnt.	Aūdīrēnt.

3. Perfect Tense—

(1) Absolute Perfect—*I may or should have advised, &c.*(2) Aorist Perfect—*I happened to advise (rare).**Singular.*

1. Mōnūxirim	Rēxirim	Aūdīvērim
2. Mōnūxērīs	Rēxērīs	Aūdīvērīs
3. Mōnūxērīt	Rēxērīt	Aūdīvērīt

Plural.

1. Mōnūxirimūs	Rēxirimūs	Aūdīvērimūs
2. Mōnūxērītīs	Rēxērītīs	Aūdīvērītīs
3. Mōnūxērīnt.	Rēxērīnt.	Aūdīvērīnt.

4. Pluperfect Tense—*Might have, should have.*
I might or should have advised, &c.

Singular.

II.	III.	IV.
1. Mōnūissem	Rēxissem	Aūdīvissem
2. Mōnūissēs	Rēxissēs	Aūdīvissēs
3. Mōnūissēt	Rēxissēt	Aūdīvissēt

Plural.

1. Mōnūissēmūs	Rēxissēmūs	Aūdīvissēmūs
2. Mōnūissētīs	Rēxissētīs	Aūdīvissētīs
3. Mōnūissēt.	Rēxissēt.	Aūdīvissēt.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Present and Imperfect Tense—*To advise, &c.*

Mōnērē.	Rēgērē.	Aūdīrē.
---------	---------	---------

2. Perfect and Pluperfect Tense—*To have advised, &c.*

Mōnūissē.	Rēxissē.	Aūdīvissē.
-----------	----------	------------

3. Future Tense—*To be about to advise, &c.*

Mōnītūrum ēssē.	Rēctūrum ēssē.	Aūdītūrum ēssē.
-----------------	----------------	-----------------

4. Gerunds—*Of advising, &c.*

Mōnēndī	Rēgēndī	Aūdīēndī
Mōnēndō	Rēgēndō	Aūdīēndō
Mōnēndum.	Rēgēndum.	Aūdīēndum.

5. Supines : (1) Active—*To advise, &c.* (2) Passive—*To be advised, &c.*

<i>Act.</i> Mōnītum	Rēctum	Aūdītum
<i>Pass.</i> Mōnītū.	Rēctū.	Aūdītū.

PARTICIPLES.

1. Present Tense—*Advising, &c.**Singular.*

II.	III.	IV.
N. V. Mōnēns	Rēgēns	Aūdīēns
G. Mōnēntīs	G. Rēgēntīs	G. Aūdīēntīs
&c., like Ingens.	&c.	&c.

2. Future Tense—*About to advise, &c.**Singular.*

N. Mōnītūrūs, ā, um,	Rēctūrūs, ā, um,
&c. like Bōnūs.	&c.
Aūdītūrūs, ā, um, &c.	

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

S. Ēgō āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Aūdīō
Tū āmās	Mōnēs	Rēgis	Aūdīs
Mātēr āmāt	Pātēr mōnēt	Rēx rēgit	Māgīstēr aūdīt
P. Nōs āmāmūs	Mōnēmūs	Rēgīmūs	Aūdīmūs
Vōs āmātīs	Mōnētīs	Rēgītīs	Aūdītīs
Mātrēs āmānt	Pātrēs mōnēt	Rēgēs rēgunt	Māgīstrī aūdīunt
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

NOTE.—The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are seldom expressed ; and the Third Person is usually expressed by a noun.

Cāntō, &c.	Tērrēō, &c.	Trāhō, &c.	Īmpēdiō, &c.
Pūellā cāntāt, &c.	Mōrs tērrēt, &c.	Ēquūs trāhīt, &c.	Ōpūs impēdīt, &c.
Ārō, &c.	Hābēō, &c.	Ēgō dicō, &c.	Ēgō finīō, &c.
Āgrīcolā ārāt, &c.	Dīvēs hābēt, &c.	Vir dīcīt, &c.	Īs finīt, &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*Am being.*

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ōr	<i>I am loved, or being loved</i>
Ām-ārīs or ām-ārē	<i>thou art loved, or being loved</i>
Ām-ātūr	<i>he is loved, or being loved</i>

Plur.	Am-āmūr	<i>We are loved, or being loved</i>
	Ām-āmīni	<i>ye are loved, or being loved</i>
	Ām-āntūr	<i>they are loved, or being loved.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense—*Was being, or used to be.*

Sing.	Ām-ābār	<i>I was being, or used to be loved</i>
	Ām-ābārīs or ām-ābārē	<i>thou wast being, or used to be loved</i>

Plur.	Ām-ābātūr	<i>he was being, or used to be loved</i>
	Ām-ābāmūr	<i>We were being, or used to be loved</i>

	Ām-ābāmīni	<i>ye were being, or used to be loved</i>
	Ām-ābāntūr	<i>they were being, or used to be loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense (1) Absolute Perfect—*Have been.*

(2) Aorist Perfect—*Was.*

Sing.	Ām-ātūs sum or fūi	<i>I was, or have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ēs or fūistī	<i>thou wast, or hast been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ēst or fūit	<i>he was, or has been loved</i>

Plur.	Ām-ātī sūmūs or fūimūs	<i>We were, or have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ēstīs or fūistīs	<i>ye were, or have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī sūnt, fūērūnt or fūērē	<i>they were, or have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense—*Had been.*

Sing.	Ām-ātūs ēram or fūēram	<i>I had been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ērās or fūērās	<i>thou hadst been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ērāt or fūērāt	<i>he had been loved</i>

Plur.	Ām-ātī ērāmūs or fūērāmūs	<i>We had been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ērātīs or fūērātīs	<i>ye had been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ērānt or fūērānt	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. First Future Tense—*Shall, or will be.*

Sing.	Ām-ābōr	<i>I shall, or will be loved</i>
	Ām-ābērīs or ām-ābērē	<i>thou shalt, or wilt be loved</i>
	Ām-ābītūr	<i>he shall, or will be loved</i>

<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ābīmūr	<i>We shall, or will be loved</i>
	Ām-ābīmīnī	<i>ye shall, or will be loved</i>
	Ām-ābūntūr	<i>they shall, or will be loved.</i>

6. Second Future Tense—*Shall, or will have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ātūs ērō or fūērō	<i>I shall have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ēris or fūērīs	<i>thou shalt have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ērit or fūērīt	<i>he shall have been loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ātī ērimūs or fūērīmūs	<i>We shall have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ēritīs or fūērītīs	<i>ye shall have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ērūt or fūērīnt	<i>they shall have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ārē, ām-ātōr	<i>Be thou loved</i>
	Ām-ātōr	<i>let him be loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-āmīnī, ām-āmīnōr	<i>be ye loved</i>
	Ām-āntōr	<i>let them be loved.</i>

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*May, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ēr	<i>I may, or should be loved</i>
	Ām-ērīs or ām-ērē	<i>thou mayst, or shouldst be loved</i>
	Ām-ētūr	<i>he may, or should be loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ēmūr	<i>We may, or should be loved</i>
	Ām-ēmīnī	<i>ye may, or should be loved</i>
	Ām-ēntūr	<i>they may, or should be loved.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense—*Might, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ārēr	<i>I might, or should be loved</i>
	Ām-ārērīs or ām- ārērē	<i>thou mightst, or shouldst be loved</i>
	Ām-ārētūr	<i>he might, or should be loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ārēmūr	<i>We might, or should be loved</i>
	Ām-ārēmīnī	<i>ye might, or should be loved</i>
	Ām-ārēntūr	<i>they might, or should be loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense—*May, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ātūs sim or fūërim	<i>I may have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs sis or fūëris	<i>thou mayst have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs sīt or fūërit	<i>he may have been loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ātī simūs or fūërimūs	<i>We may have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī sītīs or fūëritīs	<i>ye may have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī sint or fūërint	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense—*Might, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ām-ātūs ēssem or fūissem	<i>I should have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ēssēs or fūissēs	<i>thou shouldst have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātūs ēssēt or fūissēt	<i>he should have been loved</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ām-ātī ēssēmūs or fūissēmūs	<i>We should have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ēssētīs or fūissētīs	<i>ye should have been loved</i>
	Ām-ātī ēssēt or fūissēt	<i>they should have been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect Tense.

Ām-ārī *to be loved.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Ām-ātum ēssē or fūissē *to have been loved.*

Future Tense.

Ām-ātum irī *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect Tense.

Ām-ātūs *having been loved.*

Future in dus.

Ām-āndūs *to be loved.*

SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*Am being.**I am advised, or being advised, &c.**Singular.*

II.	III.	IV.
1. Mönëör	Rëgör	Aüdïör
2. Mönërïs	Rëgërïs	Aüdïrïs
or Mönërë	or Rëgërë	or Aüdïrë
3. Mönëtür	Rëgïtür	Aüdïtür

Plural.

1. Mönēmür	Rëgïmür	Aüdïmür
2. Mönëminï	Rëgïminï	Aüdïminï
3. Mönëntür.	Rëgüntür.	Aüdïüntür.

2. Imperfect Tense—*Was being, or used to be.**I was being advised, or used to be advised.**Singular.*

1. Mönëbär	Rëgëbär	Aüdïëbär
2. Mönëbärïs	Rëgëbärïs	Aüdïëbärïs
or Mönëbärë	or Rëgëbärë	or Aüdïëbärë
3. Mönëbätür	Rëgëbätür	Aüdïëbätür

Plural.

1. Mönëbämür	Rëgëbämür	Aüdïëbämür
2. Mönëbämïnï	Rëgëbämïnï	Aüdïëbämïnï
3. Mönëbäntür.	Rëgëbäntür.	Aüdïëbäntür.

3. Perfect Tense (1) Absolute Perfect—*Have been.**I have been advised.*(2) Aorist Perfect—*Was.**I was advised.**Singular.*

1. Mönïtüs sum	Rëctüs sum	Aüdïtüs sum
or fül	or fül	or fül
2. Mönïtüs ës	Rëctüs ës	Aüdïtüs ës
or fülïstï	or fülïstï	or fülïstï
3. Mönïtüs ësť	Rëctüs ësť	Aüdïtüs est
or fülť	or fülť	or fülť

Plural.

II.

1. Mōnīti sūmūs
or fūlmūs
2. Mōnīti ēstīs
or fūistīs
3. Mōnīti sūnt,
fūērunt
or fūērē.

III.

- Rēcti sūmūs
or fūimūs
- Rēcti ē-tīs
or fūistīs
- Rēcti sūnt,
fūērunt
or fūērē.

IV.

- Aūdīti sūmūs
or fūimūs
- Aūdīti ēstīs
or fūistīs
- Aūdīti sūnt,
fūērunt
or fūērē.

4. Pluperfect Tense—*Had been.**I had been advised.**Singular.*

- | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Mōnītūs ēram
or fūēram | Rēctūs ēram
or fūēram | Aūdītūs ēram
or fūēram |
| 2. Mōnītūs ērās
or fūērās | Rēctūs ērās
or fūērās | Aūdītūs ērās
or fūērās |
| 3. Mōnītūs ērāt
or fūērāt | Rēctūs ērāt
or fūērāt | Aūdītūs ērāt
or fūērāt |

Plural.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Mōnīti ērāmūs
or fūērāmūs | Rēcti ērāmūs
or fūērāmūs | Aūdīti ērāmūs
or fūērāmūs |
| 2. Mōnīti ērātīs
or fūērātīs | Rēcti ērātīs
or fūērātīs | Aūdīti ērātīs
or fūērātīs |
| 3. Mōnīti ērānt
or fūērānt. | Rēcti ērānt
or fūērānt. | Aūdīti ērānt
or fūērānt. |

5. First Future Tense—*Shall or will be.**I shall or will be advised, &c.**Singular.*

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Mōnēbōr | Rēgār | Aūdiār |
| 2. Mōnēbēris
or Mōnēbērē | Rēgēris
or Rēgērē | Aūdiēris
or Aūdiērē |
| 3. Mōnēbītūr | Rēgētūr | Aūdiētūr |

Plural.

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. Mōnēbīmūr | Rēgēmūr | Aūdiēmūr |
| 2. Mōnēbīmīnī | Rēgēmīnī | Aūdiēmīnī |
| 3. Mōnēbūntūr. | Rēgēntūr. | Aūdiēntūr. |

6. Second Future Tense—*Shall, or will have been.**I shall or will have been advised, &c.**Singular.*

II.	III.	IV.
1. Mōnītūs ērō or fūērō	Rēctūs ērō or fūērō	Auditūs ērō or fūērō
2. Mōnītūs ēris or fūērīs	Rēctūs ēris or fūērīs	Auditūs ēris or fūērīs
3. Mōnītūs ērit or fūērīt	Rēctūs ērit or fūērīt	Auditūs ērit or fūērīt

Plural.

1. Mōnītī ērimūs or fūērīmūs	Rēctī ērimūs or fūērīmūs	Auditī ērimūs or fūērīmūs
2. Mōnītī ēritīs or fūērītīs	Rēctī ēritīs or fūērītīs	Auditī ēritīs or fūērītīs
3. Mōnītī ērunt or fūērīnt.	Rēctī ērunt or fūērīnt.	Auditī ērunt or fūērīnt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Be thou advised ; let him be advised, &c.**Singular.*

2. Mōnērē, Mōnētōr	Rēgērē, Rēgītōr	Aūdīrē, Aūdītōr
3. Mōnētōr	Rēgītōr	Aūdītōr

Plural.

2. Mōnēmīnī	Rēgīmīnī	Aūdīmīnī
Mōnēmīnōr	Rēgīmīnōr	Aūdīmīnōr
3. Mōnētōr.	Rēgūntōr.	Aūdīuntōr.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*May or should be.**I may or should be advised, &c.**Singular.*

1. Mōnēār	Rēgār	Aūdīār
2. Mōnēārīs or Mōnēārē	Rēgārīs or Rēgārē	Aūdīārīs or Aūdīārē
3. Mōnēātūr	Rēgātūr	Aūdīātūr

Plural.

II.

1. Mōnēāmūr
2. Mōnēāmīnī
3. Mōnēāntūr.

III.

- Rēgāmūr
- Rēgāmīnī
- Rēgāntūr.

IV.

- Aūdiāmūr
- Aūdiāmīnī
- Aūdiāntūr.

2. Imperfect Tense—*Might or should be.**I might or should be advised, &c.**Singular.*

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Mōnērēr | Rēgērēr | Aūdīrēr |
| 2. Mōnērēris | Rēgērēris | Aūdīrēris |
| or Mōnērērē | or Rēgērērē | or Aūdīrērē |
| 3. Mōnērētūr | Rēgērētūr | Aūdīrētūr |

Plural.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Mōnērēmūr | Rēgērēmūr | Aūdīrēmūr |
| 2. Mōnērēmīnī | Rēgērēmīnī | Aūdīrēmīnī |
| 3. Mōnērēntūr. | Rēgērēntūr. | Aūdīrēntūr. |

3. Perfect Tense.

(1) Absolute Perfect—*May have been, should have been.**I may or should have been advised, &c.*(2) Aorist Perfect (rare)—*Happened to be.**I happened to be advised, &c.**Singular.*

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. Mōnītūs sim | Rēctūs sim | Aūdītūs sim |
| or fūērim | or fūērim | or fūērim |
| 2. Mōnītūs sis | Rēctūs sis | Aūdītūs sis |
| or fūērīs | or fūērīs | or fūērīs |
| 3. Mōnītūs sīt | Rēctūs sīt | Aūdītūs sīt |
| or fūērīt | or fūērīt | or fūērīt |

Plural.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Mōnītī simūs | Rēctī simūs | Aūdītī simūs |
| or fūērīmūs | or fūērīmūs | or fūērīmūs |
| 2. Mōnītī sītīs | Rēctī sītīs | Aūdītī sītīs |
| or fūērītīs | or fūērītīs | or fūērītīs |
| 3. Mōnītī sint | Rēctī sint | Aūdītī sint |
| or fūērīnt. | or fūērīnt. | or fūērīnt. |

4. Pluperfect Tense—*Might have been, should have been.*
I might or should have been advised, &c.

Singular.

II.	III.	IV.
1. Mōnītūs ēssem or fūissem	Rēctūs ēssem or fūissem	Aūdītūs ēssēm or fūissēm
2. Mōnītūs ēssēs or fūissēs	Rēctūs ēssēs or fūissēs	Aūdītūs ēssēs or fūissēs
3. Mōnītūs ēssēt or fūissēt	Rēctūs ēssēt or fūissēt	Aūdītūs ēssēt or fūissēt

Plural.

1. Mōnītī ēssēmūs or fūissēmūs	Rēctī ēssēmūs or fūissēmūs	Aūdītī ēssēmūs or fūissēmūs
2. Mōnītī ēssētīs or fūissētīs	Rēctī ēssētīs or fūissētīs	Aūdītī ēssētīs or fūissētīs
3. Mōnītī ēssēt or fūissēt.	Rēctī ēssēt or fūissēt.	Aūdītī ēssēt or fūissēt.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Present and Imperfect Tense—*To be advised, &c.*

Mōnērī.

Rēgī.

Aūdīrī.

2. Perfect and Pluperfect Tense—*To have been advised, &c.*

Mōnītum ēssē
or fūissē.

Rēctum ēssē
or fūissē.

Aūdītum ēssē
or fūissē.

3. Future Tense—*To be about to be advised, &c.*

Mōnītum īrī.

Rēctum īrī.

Aūdītum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

1. Perfect Tense—*Having been advised, &c.*

Mōnītūs.

Rēctūs.

Aūdītūs.

2. Participle in -dus—*To be advised, &c.*

Mōnēndūs.

Rēgēndūs.

Aūdīēndūs.

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Ēgō āmōr, &c.	Mātēr āmātūr, &c.
Yōcōr, &c.	Sērvūs vōcātūr, &c.
Rōgōr, &c.	Rēx rōgātūr, &c.
Ēgō mōnēōr, &c.	Pūēr mōnētūr, &c.
Hābēōr, &c.	Āgēr hābētūr, &c.
Tērrēōr, &c.	Ōvis tērrētūr, &c.
Ēgō rēgōr, &c.	Pōpūlus rēgītūr, &c.
Dūcōr, &c.	Āgmēn dūcītūr, &c.
Tēgōr, &c.	Cāpūt tēgītūr, &c.
Ēgō aūdīōr, &c.	Vōx aūdītūr, &c.
Pūnīōr, &c.	Mālūs pūnītūr, &c.
Nūtrīōr, &c.	Agnūs nūtrītūr, &c.

§ 40. OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

I. VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*.

Some Verbs in *IO* belong to the Third Conjugation instead of the Fourth, the *I* being inserted after the characteristic letter. Hence they throw away the *i* in certain cases, viz., before another *i* or *er*, or before *e* final. But they retain it before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *s* in other cases.

As *Capio*—

- | | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Capis</i> | <i>capi</i> | <i>capere</i> | <i>caperem</i> | <i>cape</i> , &c. |
| 2. <i>Capiam</i> | <i>capiunt</i> | <i>capiebam</i> | <i>capiendi</i> , &c. | |

This class of Verbs consists of the following, with their compounds—

Quīndēcim, ūt cāpīō,	Pārō, ēt quātō,
Cūpīō, ēt rāpīō,	Spēctō,* ēt pātōr
Sāpīō, ēt faciō,	Grādōr, ēt mōrōr;
Fūgō, ēt jūcō,	His ādjūngas pōtōr†
Fōdō, ēt lācō,*	Ūlīmā, ēt ōrōr.

II. VARIATIONS IN FORM.

1. Perfects in *VI*, and the tenses derived from them, often throw out *V*, and sometimes contract *AI*, or *AE*, into *Ā*, and *EE*, *EI*, into *Ē*, and *II* into *Ī*, especially in poetry.

* *Lacio* and *specio* are obsolete, and are found only in their compounds: as, *ālīlacio*, *pēlīlacio*, *āspīcō*, *cōspīcō*, &c.

† *Potior* and *orior* only follow the rule in a few cases. See § 41, p. 111.

Thus (I.), *Avis* into *ās*: *as*, *āmāstī* for *āmāvistī*, *āmāssē* for *āmāvissē*.
Ave into *ā*: *as*, *āmārūnt* for *āmāvērūnt*; *āmāssem* for *āmāvissem*.

(II.) *Evis* into *ēs*: *as*, *implēssem* for *implēvissem*.

Eve into *ē*: *as*, *implērūnt* for *implēvērūnt*; *implērānt* for *implēvērānt*.

(III.) *Io* into *ī*: *as*, *aūdītī* for *aūdivītī*; *aūdītērūnt* for *aūdivērūnt*.

Ivis into *īis*, or *is*: *as*, *aūdīssē* and *aūdīssē* for *aūdivissē*.

Obs. 1. In the Third Conjugation, *nōvi* follows the same rule: *as*, *nōstī*, *nōram*, *nōrim*, *nōssē*; for *nōvistī*, *nōvēram*, *nōvērim*, and *nōvissē*. Also perfects, &c., in *ivi*: *as*, *pētī*, *dēstī*, &c. for *pētīvī*, *dēstīvī*, &c.

Obs. 2. So also in the Second Conjugation, *ādābram*, *sūmmōssem*, *cōmmōssē*; for *ādmōvēram*, *sūmmōvissem*, *cōmmōvisse*.

2. The Imperfect of the Fourth Conjugation is sometimes contracted into *ibam*: *as*, *lēnībāt* for *lēnēbāt*; *vēstībāt* for *vēstēbāt*.

3. The following Imperatives throw off *e* from the Second Person Singular, viz.—

Dic from *dicō* (for *dice*) *Fāc* from *fācō* (for *face*)

Dūc from *dūcō* (for *duce*) *Fēr* from *fērō* (for *fere*).

So *Fī* from *fīō*. But *cōnficē* from *cōnficiō*.

III. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

The Participles in *rus* and *dus*, with the auxiliary verb *sum*, form a new conjugation, expressing respectively *intention* and *necessity*, called the Periphrastic Conjugation: as—

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(I) Am		Was being	Have been, Was	Had been	Shall be	Shall have been
Amātūrūs	sum	eram	fui	fueram	erō	fuerō
"	ēs	eras	fuiſtī	fuerās	eris	fueris
"	est	erāt	fuit	fuerāt	erit	fuerit
Amātūrī	sūmūs	erāmūs	fūimūs	fuerāmūs	erimūs	fuerimūs
"	estis	erātis	fuiſtis	fuerātis	eritis	fueritis
"	sūnt	erānt	fuerūnt	fuerānt	erūnt	fuerint
			or fūērē			

About to love.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(I) May be	Might be	May have been	Might have been
Amātūrūs	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sim	or forem	&c.	&c.
&c.	&c.		

About to love.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Āmātūrum ēssē Āmātūrum fūissē Āmātūrum fōrē.

These tenses are frequently used as Futures of the Active Voice, especially to supply the want of Futures in the Conjunctive Mood.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(I) Am	Was	Have been, Was	Had been	Shall be	Shall have been
Āmāndūs sum	ērām	fūi	fūēram	ērō	fūērō
" ēs	ērās	fūisti	fūērās	ērīs	fūērīs
" ēst	ērāt	fūit	fūērāt	ērīt	fūērīt
Āmāndī sūmūs	ērāmūs	fūimūs	fūērāmūs	ērīmūs	fūērīmūs
" ēstis	ērātīs	fūistīs	fūērātīs	ērītīs	fūērītīs
" sūnt	ērānt	fūērūnt	fūērānt	ērūnt	fūērīnt.
		or fūērē			
		To be loved.			

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(I) May be	Might be	May have been	Might have been.
Āmāndūs sim	ēssem	fūērim	fūissem
&c.	or fōrem	&c.	&c.
	&c.		
		To be loved.	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Āmāndum ēssē Āmāndum fūissē Āmāndum fōrē.

IV. PECULIARITIES OF THE TENSES.

1. The difference between the Imperfect, Aorist Perfect, and Absolute Perfect is as follows:—

1. The Imperfect represents a thing as *going on* and *unfinished* at some *past time*; that is, *present* at some *past time*: as —

Ēpistōlam hērī cīrcītēr ōctāvam hōram scribēbam, I was writing a letter yesterday, about eight o'clock.*

* i. e. About eight o'clock yesterday I was in the middle of my letter and had not finished it.

2. The Aorist Perfect represents a thing as *simply done and finished*; in some *past* time: as—

Ēpistōlam hēri scripsī, I wrote a letter yesterday.*

3. The Absolute Perfect represents a thing as *now done and finished*; that is, *completed and past* by the *Present* time: as—

Ēpistōlam lātūs scripsī, Happy me! I have written a letter.†

2. Besides the signs of the Conjunctive given in the Conjugations, of which the first is generally employed in the ordinary use of the tenses, and the second for them when used as *futures* (see pp. 46, 131), the following are sometimes useful—

Present	Āmem,	I can or would	} love or be loving.
Imperfect	Āmārem,	I could or would	
Perfect	Āmāvērīm,	I can or would	} have loved.
Pluperfect	Āmāvissem,	I could or would	

3. When the Conjunctive Mood is really *Subjunctive*, that is, *subjoined* to governing Conjunctions, Relatives, Interrogatives, or used in *Oratio Obliqua*, its Tenses often have the same signs as in the Indicative: thus—

Sūnt quī nōn hābēant, There are (those) who have not.

Rōgāvī quid fācērēt, I asked what he was doing.

Rēspōndēt, sē ēā, quē dēcūrēt, fēcissē, He answers, that he has done those things which it was fit (that he should do).

• Quūm pārūtissēt, laudātūs ēst, When he had obeyed, he was praised.

4. The Present Conjunctive is also used for the Imperative; especially in *prohibitions* with *nē*: as—

Act. Āmem, may I love, or let me love
 Āmēs, mayst thou love, or love thou
 Āmēt, may he love, or let him love
 Āmēmūs, may we love, or let us love
 Āmētīs, may ye love, or love ye
 Āmēnt, may they love, or let them love.

Pass. Āmēr, may I be loved, or let me be loved
 Āmērīs (ē), mayst thou be loved, or be thou loved
 Āmētūr, may he be loved, or be he loved
 Āmēmūr, may we be loved, or be we loved
 Āmēmīnī, may ye be loved, or be ye loved
 Āmēntūr, may they be loved, or be they loved.

NOTE.—The second Person singular of the Perfect is used in a still softer way in prohibitions for an Imperative: as, *nē id fēcērīs*, do not, I pray, do that.

* *i. e.* I wrote and finished my letter some time yesterday.

† *i. e.* I have now written and finished my letter.

5. The Infinitive after the Accusative is construed as an Indicative:
as—

Dicit mē āmārē, He says that I am loving.

Dixit mē āmāvissē, He said that I had loved.

6. The difference between the Present Infinitive Passive, the Participle in *-dus*, and the Supine in *-u*, is as follows:—

(1) The Present Infinitive Passive is used after a Verb: as, *libēr lēgi dēbēt*, the book ought to be read.

(2) The Participle in *-dus*, being an Adjective (p. 3), agrees with a Substantive: as, *libēr lēgēndūs*, a book to be read; *libēr lēgēndūs ēst*, the book is to be read (p. 71).

(3) The Supine in *-u* comes after an Adjective: as, *difficilis intēl-lēctū*, difficult to be understood.

§ 41. FORMATION OF PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

Compounded verbs are generally conjugated like the verbs with which they are compounded.

FIRST CONJUGATION (A).

ĀVĪ—ĀTUM.

As, *Āmō*, to love *āmāvī* *āmātum*.

(See § 37, p. 49.)

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Ūi—ūtum.

<i>Cūbō</i> ,	to lie down;	<i>cūbūi</i> ,	<i>cūbūtum</i>	
<i>Dōmō</i> ,	to tame;	<i>dōmūi</i> ,	<i>dōmūtum</i>	
<i>Sōnō</i> ,	to sound;	<i>sōnūi</i> ,	<i>sōnūtum</i> ,	<i>sōnātūrūs</i> .
<i>Tōnō</i> ,	to thunder;	<i>tōnūi</i> ,	<i>tōnūtum</i>	
<i>Vētō</i> ,	to forbid;	<i>vētūi</i> ,	<i>vētūtum</i>	
<i>Micō</i> ,	to glitter;	<i>mīcūi</i> .		

2. Ūi—ctum.

<i>Sēcō</i> ,	to cut;	<i>sēcūi</i> ,	<i>sēctum</i> ,	<i>sēcātūrūs</i> .
---------------	---------	----------------	-----------------	--------------------

3. Vi—tum.

<i>Jūvō</i> ,	to help;	{ <i>jūvāvī</i> ,		<i>jūvātūrūs</i> .
		{ <i>jūvī</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> .	
<i>Lāvō</i> ,	to wash;	{ <i>lāvāvī</i> ,	{ <i>lāvātum</i>	
		{ <i>lāvī</i> ,	{ <i>laūtum</i>	
			{ <i>lōtum</i> .	

4. Quite Irregular.

<i>Dō,</i>	to give;	<i>dēdī,</i>	<i>dātum</i>
<i>Stō,</i>	to stand;	<i>stēdī,</i>	<i>stātum.</i>

NOTE.—The compounds of *dō*, as *abdō*, *addō*, *cōndō*, *crēdō*, *dēdō*, *ēdō*, *ōbdō*, *pērdō*, *prōdō*, *rēddō*, *trādō*, *vēndō*, are conjugated after the Third Conjugation, except four compounded with words of two syllables; viz., *circūmdō*, *pēssūmdō* (or *pēssūndō*), *sūtisdō*, *vēnūndō*, which are conjugated like *dō*. The compounds of *stō* form the perfect in *ī*: as, *cōnstō*, *prēstō*; except four compounded with prepositions of two syllables, viz., *āntēstō*, *circūmstō*, *intērstō*, *sūpērstō*.

SECOND CONJUGATION (E).

ŪI.—ITUM.

As, *Mōnēō* *mōnūī* *mōnītum,*

(See § 37, p. 49.)

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Ēvi—ētum.*

(Words in *lēō*, and *nēō*, to spin.)

<i>Dēlēō,</i>	to blot out;	<i>dēlēvī,</i>	<i>dēlētum</i>
<i>Flēō,</i>	to weep;	<i>flēvī,</i>	<i>flētum</i>
<i>Cōmplēō,</i>	to fill up;	<i>cōmplēvī,</i>	<i>cōmplētum (plēō).</i>

2. *Di* and *sum*.

(Words in *dēō*.)

(1.)

<i>Prāndēō,</i>	to breakfast;	<i>prāndī,</i>	<i>prānsum</i>
<i>Sēdēō,</i>	to sit;	<i>sēdī,</i>	<i>sēssum (i.e. sed-sum)</i>
<i>Vīdēō,</i>	to see;	<i>vidī,</i>	<i>visum.</i>

(2.)

Reduplicated in the Perfect.

<i>Mōrdēō,</i>	to bite;	<i>mōmōrdī,</i>	<i>mōrsum</i>
<i>Pēndēō,</i>	to hang;	<i>pēpēndī,</i>	<i>pēnsum (cf. Pendo).</i>
<i>Spōndēō,</i>	to promise;	<i>spōpōndī,</i>	<i>spōnsum</i>
<i>Tōndēō,</i>	to shear;	<i>tōtōndī,</i>	<i>tōnsum.</i>

NOTE.—The reduplication is thrown away in the compounds.

3. *Sī* and *sum*.

(1.)

<i>Ārdēō,</i>	to burn;	<i>ārsī,</i>	<i>ārsūm</i>
<i>Hārēō,</i>	to stick;	<i>hārsī,</i>	<i>hārsūm</i>
<i>Jūbēō,</i>	to bid;	<i>jūssī,</i>	<i>jūssum</i> (i.e. <i>jub-si</i> , &c.)
<i>Mānēō,</i>	to remain;	<i>mānsī,</i>	<i>mānsūm</i>
<i>Mūlcēō,</i>	to soothe;	<i>mūlsī,</i>	<i>mūlsūm</i>
<i>Ridēō,</i>	to laugh;	<i>risī,</i>	<i>risūm</i>
<i>Suādēō,</i>	to persuade;	<i>suāsī,</i>	<i>suāsūm</i> .

(2.)

<i>Fūlgēō,</i>	to shine;	<i>fūlsī,</i>	(Fulgo, 3. Poetical.)
<i>Ūrgēō,</i>	to press;	<i>ūrī.</i>	

4. *Sī* and *tum*
and
Xi and *tum*.

(1.)

<i>Indūlgēō,</i>	to indulge;	<i>indūlsī,</i>	<i>indūltum</i>
<i>Tōrquēō,</i>	to twist;	<i>tōrsī,</i>	<i>tōrtum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Aūgēō,</i>	to increase;	<i>aūxī,</i>	<i>aūctum</i> .
<i>Lūcēō,</i>	to shine;	<i>lūxī</i>	(luctus, mourning).
<i>Lūgēō,</i>	to bewail;	<i>lūxī</i>	

5. (*Veō*) *Vi* and *tum*.

(1.)

<i>Cāvēō,</i>	to beware;	<i>cāvī,</i>	<i>caūtum</i> (i.e. <i>cav-tum</i>)
<i>Fāvēō,</i>	to favour;	<i>fāvī,</i>	<i>faūtum</i>
<i>Fōvēō,</i>	to cherish;	<i>fōvī,</i>	<i>fōtum</i>
<i>Mōvēō,</i>	to move;	<i>mōvī,</i>	<i>mōtum</i>
<i>Vōvēō,</i>	to vow;	<i>vōvī,</i>	<i>vōtum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Fervēō,</i>	to boil;	<i>fērbūī,</i>	(Fervo, 3. Fervi.)
<i>Pāvēō,</i>	to dread;	<i>pāvī.</i>	

6. *Ui* and *tum*.

(1.)

<i>Dŏcĕō</i> ,	to teach;	<i>dŏcŭi</i> ,	<i>dŏctum</i>
<i>Miscĕō</i> ,	to mix;	<i>miscŭi</i> ,	<i>mixtum</i>
<i>Tĕnĕō</i> ,	to hold;	<i>tĕnŭi</i> ,	<i>tĕntum</i> (rare, except in compounds)
<i>Tŏrrĕō</i> ,	to roast;	<i>tŏrrŭi</i> ,	<i>tŏstum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Cĕnsĕō</i> ,	to reckon;	<i>cĕnsŭi</i> ,	<i>cĕnsum</i> .
-----------------	------------	-----------------	-----------------

7. IRREGULARS.

(1.)

<i>Citō</i> ,	to rouse;	<i>civī</i> ,	<i>cĭtum</i> .
---------------	-----------	---------------	----------------

(2.)

<i>Audĕō</i> ,	to dare;	<i>aŭsŭs sum</i> ,	<i>aŭsum</i>
<i>Gaudĕō</i> ,	to be glad;	<i>gāvisŭs sum</i> ,	<i>gāvisum</i>
<i>Sŏlĕō</i> ,	to be accustomed;	<i>sŏlitŭs sum</i> ,	<i>sŏlitum</i> .

Obs. 1. Some Verbs, especially intransitives of the second conjugation, have no supine.

Obs. 2. Some Verbs, almost all intransitives, have no perfect or supine.

THIRD OR CONSONANTAL CONJUGATION.

I. MUTE VERBS—*Si*, AND *Tum* OR *Sum*.1. LABIALS. *Psi*—*ptum*.(1.)—*Bo*.

<i>Scribĕ</i> ,	to write;	<i>scripsi</i> ,	<i>scriptum</i>
<i>Nŭbĕ</i> ,	to be married to;	<i>nŭpsi</i> ,	<i>nŭptum</i>
<i>Glŭbĕ</i> ,	to peel;	<i>glŭpsi</i>	<i>glŭptum</i> .

(2.)—*Po*.

<i>Cārpō</i> ,	to pluck;	<i>cāripsi</i> ,	<i>cārptum</i>
<i>Rĕpō</i> ,	to creep;	<i>rĕpsi</i> ,	<i>rĕptum</i>
<i>Scālpō</i> ,	to carve;	<i>scālpsi</i> ,	<i>scālptum</i>
<i>Scŭlpō</i> ,		<i>scŭlpsi</i> ,	<i>scŭlptum</i>
<i>Sĕrpō</i> ,	to crawl;	<i>sĕripsi</i> ,	<i>sĕrptum</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Incumbō,</i>	to lie down;	<i>incubūi,</i>	<i>incubūtum</i> (<i>Cumbō</i>)
<i>Strēpō,</i>	to rattle;	<i>strēpūi,</i>	<i>strēpitum</i>
<i>Rūmpō</i>	to break;	<i>rūpi,</i>	<i>rūptum</i>
<i>Bibō,</i>	to drink;	<i>bibi.</i>	

2. GUTTURALS. Xi—ctum.

(1.)—Co.

<i>Dicō,</i>	to say;	<i>dixi,</i>	<i>dictum</i>
<i>Ducō,</i>	to lead;	<i>duxi,</i>	<i>ductum.</i>

(2.)—Gō, or Guo.

<i>Rēgō,</i>	to rule;	<i>rēxi,</i>	<i>rēctum</i>	} (compounds of <i>rego</i> .)
<i>Pērgō,</i>	to go on;	<i>pērrēxi,</i>	<i>pērrēctum</i>	
<i>Sūrgō,</i>	to rise;	<i>sūrrēxi,</i>	<i>sūrrēctum,</i>	
<i>Cīngō,</i>	to gird;	<i>cīnxi,</i>	<i>cinctum</i>	
<i>Jūngō,</i>	to join;	<i>jūnxi,</i>	<i>jūnctum</i>	
<i>Plāngō,</i>	to beat the breast;	<i>plānxi,</i>	<i>plānctum</i>	
<i>Sūgō,</i>	to suck;	<i>sūxi,</i>	<i>sūctum</i>	
<i>Tēgō,</i>	to cover;	<i>tēxi,</i>	<i>tēctum</i>	
<i>Tīngō,</i>	} to dye;	<i>tīnxi,</i>	<i>tinctum</i>	
<i>Tīnguō,</i>				
<i>Ūngō,</i>	} to anoint;	<i>ūnxi,</i>	<i>unctum</i>	
<i>Ūnguō,</i>				
<i>Ēxstinguō,</i>	to extinguish;	<i>ēxstīnxi</i>	<i>ēxstinctum</i> (<i>stīnguō</i>).	

(3.)—Ho.

<i>Trāhō,</i>	to draw;	<i>trāxi,</i>	<i>trāctum</i>
<i>Vēhō,</i>	to carry;	<i>vēxi,</i>	<i>vēctum.</i>

(4.)—Quo.

<i>Cōquō,</i>	to cook;	<i>cōxi,</i>	<i>cōctum.</i>
---------------	----------	--------------	----------------

EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) In the Supine.

<i>Figō,</i>	to fix;	<i>fixi,</i>	<i>fixum</i>
<i>Fingō,</i>	to fashion;	<i>fīnxi,</i>	<i>fictum</i>
<i>Pingō</i>	to paint;	<i>pinxi,</i>	<i>pictum.</i>

(2.) In the Perfect.

<i>Āgō,</i>	to do;	<i>ēgi,</i>	<i>āctum</i>
<i>Lēgō,</i>	to choose;	<i>lēgi,</i>	<i>lēctum</i>
<i>Pūngō,</i>	to prick;	<i>pūpūgi,</i>	<i>pūnctum.</i>

(3.) In both Perfect and Supine.

A			
<i>Frangō</i>	to break;	<i>frēgi</i> ,	<i>fractum</i>
<i>Linquō</i> ,	to leave;	<i>liqui</i> ,	<i>lictum</i>
<i>Tangō</i> ,	to touch;	<i>tēgi</i> ,	<i>lactum</i>
<i>Vincō</i> ,	to conquer;	<i>vici</i> ,	<i>victum.</i>

B.			
<i>Mergō</i> ,	to sink;	<i>mēsi</i> ,	<i>mersum</i>
<i>Spargō</i> ,	to sprinkle;	<i>spāsi</i> ,	<i>sparsum</i>
<i>Tergō</i> ,	to wipe;	<i>tēsi</i> ,	<i>tersum.</i>
<i>Tergō</i> ,			

C.			
<i>Pārcō</i> ,	to spare;	<i>pēpēci</i> .	<i>pāsum.</i>

NOTE.—The compounds of *lēgō*, as *cōlligō*, *dēligō*, *ēligō*, *sēligō*, *pērlēgō*, *sūbligō*, follow *lēgō*; except *diligō*, *intelligō*, and *negligō*, which make *xī* and *ctum*.

3. LINGUALS. *Si* and *Sum*.(1.)—*Do*.

<i>Claudō</i> ,	to shut;	<i>clausi</i> ,	<i>clausum</i>
<i>Dividō</i> ,	to divide;	<i>divisi</i> ,	<i>divisum</i>
<i>Lādō</i> ,	to hurt;	<i>lāsi</i> ,	<i>lāsum</i>
<i>Lūdō</i> ,	to play;	<i>lūsi</i> ,	<i>lūsum</i>
<i>Plaūdō</i> ,	to clap;	<i>plausi</i> ,	<i>plausum</i>
<i>Cēdō</i> ,	to yield;	<i>cēsi</i> ,	<i>cēsum (ced-si, &c.)</i>

(2.)—*To*.

<i>Flēctō</i> ,	to bend;	<i>flēxi</i> ,	<i>flēxum (flec-si, &c.)</i>
<i>Nēctō</i> ,	to bind;	<i>nēxi</i> ,	<i>nēxum (x=cs)</i>
		<i>nēxī</i> ,	
<i>Mittō</i>	to send;	<i>misi</i> ,	<i>missum (mit-sum).</i>

A. EXCEPTIONS IN *Do—di—sum*.A. Making *di* and *sum* regularly.

<i>Accēndō</i> } (<i>cando</i>),	to kindle;	<i>accēndi</i>	<i>accēnsum, &c.</i>
<i>Dēfēndō</i> } (<i>fendo</i>),	to defend;	<i>dēfēndi</i> ,	<i>dēfēnsum, &c.</i>
<i>Ēdō</i> ,	to eat;	<i>ēdi</i> ,	<i>ēsum.</i>

<i>Prēhēdō</i> ,	to take;	<i>prēhēdī</i> ,	<i>prēhēsum</i>
<i>Pāndō</i> ,	to open;	<i>pāndī</i> ,	<i>pāsum</i>
<i>Scāndō</i> ,	to climb;	<i>scāndī</i> ,	<i>scāsum</i> .
<i>Cādō</i> ,	to cut;	<i>cēcīdī</i> ,	<i>cāsum</i>
<i>Cādō</i> ,	to fall;	<i>cēcīdī</i> ,	<i>cāsum</i>
<i>Pēndō</i> ,	to weigh;	<i>pēpēndī</i> ,	<i>pēsum</i> (cf. <i>pendeo</i>)
<i>Tēndō</i> ,	to stretch;	<i>tētēndī</i> ,	{ <i>tēsum</i> <i>tētum</i> .

B. Making *di* and *sum* irregularly.

<i>Fīndō</i> ,	to cleave;	<i>fīdī</i> ,	<i>fīsum</i>
<i>Fūdō</i> ,	to pour;	<i>fūdī</i> ,	<i>fūsum</i>
<i>Scīdō</i> ,	to cut asunder;	<i>scīdī</i> ,	<i>scīsum</i>
<i>Tūdō</i> ,	to beat;	<i>tūtūdī</i> ,	{ <i>tūsum</i> <i>tūsum</i> .

C.

<i>Āddō</i> (<i>Do</i>),	to add;	<i>āddīdī</i> ,	<i>āddītum</i>
<i>Fīdō</i> ,	to trust;	<i>fīsūs sum</i> ,	<i>fīsum</i> .

B. EXCEPTIONS IN *To*.

<i>Mētō</i> ,	to mow;	<i>mēssūi</i> ,	<i>mēssum</i>
<i>Pētō</i> ,	to seek;	<i>pētīvi</i> ,	<i>pētītum</i>
<i>Sistō</i> ,	to stop;	<i>stītī</i> ,	<i>stātum</i>
<i>Vērō</i> ,	to turn;	<i>vērī</i> ,	<i>vērsum</i> .

II. LIQUID VERBS.

1. *Lo—ūi* and *tum* (*ītum*).

<i>Alō</i> ,	to nourish;	<i>ālūi</i> ,	{ <i>āltum</i> <i>ālītum</i>
<i>Cōlō</i> ,	to cultivate;	<i>cōlūi</i> ,	<i>cūltum</i>
<i>Cōnsulō</i> ,	to consult;	<i>cōnsulūi</i> ,	<i>cōnsūltum</i>
<i>Occulō</i> ,	to hide;	<i>occulūi</i>	<i>occūltum</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Fālō</i> ,	to deceive;	<i>fēfēlli</i> ,	<i>fālsum</i>
<i>Pēllō</i> ,	to drive;	<i>pēpūli</i> ,	<i>pūlsum</i>
<i>Percellō</i> } (<i>cēllō</i>), }	to beat down;	<i>pērcūli</i>	<i>pērcūlsun</i>
<i>Vēllō</i> ,	to pluck;	<i>vēlli</i> ,	<i>vūlsun</i>
<i>Tollō</i> ,	to raise;	<i>sūstūli</i> ,	<i>sūblātum</i> .

2. *Mo*—*ui* and *itum*.

<i>Frēmō</i> ,	to roar;	<i>frēmūi</i> ,	<i>frēmītum</i>
<i>Gēmō</i> ,	to groan;	<i>gēmūi</i> ,	<i>gēmītum</i>
<i>Vōmō</i> ,	to vomit;	<i>vōmūi</i> ,	<i>vōmītum</i> .

EXCEPTIONS. *Psi* and *ptum*.

(1.)

<i>Cōmō</i> ,	to comb;	<i>cōmpsi</i>	<i>cōmptum</i>
<i>Dēmō</i> ,	to take away;	<i>dēmpsi</i> ,	<i>dēmptum</i>
<i>Prōmō</i> ,	to bring forth;	<i>prōmpsi</i> ,	<i>prōmptum</i>
<i>Sūmō</i> ,	to take;	<i>sūmpsi</i> ,	<i>sūmptum</i> .

N.B.—The 'p' is sometimes omitted, as *cōmsi*, *cōmtum*, &c.

(2.)

<i>Ēmō</i> ,	to buy;	<i>ēmī</i> ,	<i>ēmtum</i> (<i>emtum</i>)
<i>Prēmō</i> ,	to press;	<i>prēssi</i> ,	<i>prēssum</i> .

3. *No*.

(1.)

<i>Gignō</i> ,	to beget;	<i>gēnūi</i> ,	<i>gēnītum</i>
<i>Pōnō</i> ,	to put;	<i>pōsūi</i> ,	<i>pōsītum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Cernō</i> ,	to see;	<i>crēvi</i>	<i>crētum</i>
<i>Spērno</i> ,	to spurn;	<i>sprēvi</i> ,	<i>sprētum</i>
<i>Stērno</i> ,	to strew;	<i>strāvi</i> ,	<i>strātum</i> .

(3.)

<i>Cāno</i> ,	to sing;	<i>cēcni</i> ,	<i>cāntum</i>
<i>Līno</i> ,	to smear;	<i>lēvi</i> ,	<i>lītum</i>
<i>Sīno</i> ,	to suffer;	<i>sīvi</i> ,	<i>sītum</i>
<i>Tēmno</i> ,	to despise;	<i>tēmpsi</i> ,	<i>tēmptum</i> (<i>p.</i> sometimes omitted).

4. *Ro*.

(1.)

<i>Gērō</i> ,	to bear;	<i>gēssi</i>	<i>gēstum</i>
<i>Ūrō</i> ,	to burn;	<i>ūssi</i> ,	<i>ūstum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Cūrro</i> ,	to run;	<i>cūcūrri</i> ,	<i>cūrsūm</i> .
----------------	---------	------------------	-----------------

(3.)

<i>Sērō</i> ,	to sow;	<i>sēvi</i> ,	<i>sātum</i>
<i>Tērō</i> ,	to rub;	<i>trivi</i> ,	<i>tritum</i>
<i>Quārō</i> ,	to seek;	<i>quāsivi</i> .	<i>quāsītum</i> .

(4.)

<i>Sērō,</i>	to plait;	<i>sērūi,</i>	<i>sērtum</i>
<i>Fērō,</i>	to bear;	<i>tūli,</i>	<i>lātum</i> (§ 43, p. 87).

III. SEMI-CONSONANTAL VERBS.

1. Io.

(1.)—*Pio.*

<i>Cāpio,</i>	to take;	<i>cēpi,</i>	<i>cāptum</i>
<i>Cūpio,</i>	to desire;	<i>cūpivi,</i>	<i>cūpitum</i>
<i>Rāpio,</i>	to seize;	<i>rāpi,</i>	<i>rāptum.</i>

(2.)—*Cio.*

<i>Fācio,</i>	to make;	<i>fēci,</i>	<i>fāctum</i>
<i>Jācio,</i>	to cast;	<i>jēci</i>	<i>jāctum</i>
<i>Āllūcio</i> } (<i>lacio</i>), }	to entice;	<i>āllēxi,</i>	<i>āllēctum</i>
<i>Āspiciō</i> } (<i>specio</i>), }	to look at;	<i>āspēxi,</i>	<i>āspēctum.</i>

(3.)

<i>Fōdio,</i>	to dig;	<i>fōdi,</i>	<i>fōssum</i> (<i>de</i>)
<i>Fūgio,</i>	to flee;	<i>fūgi,</i>	<i>fūgitum</i>
<i>Pārto,</i>	to bring forth;	<i>pēpēri,</i>	<i>pārtum,</i> <i>pārītūris</i>
<i>Quāto,</i>	to shake;	<i>quāsi,</i>	<i>quāssum</i> (<i>is</i>).

2. *Uo* and *Vo*, *i* (*ūi*), *ūtum*.

<i>Ācūō,</i>	to sharpen;	<i>ācūi,</i>	<i>ācūtum</i>
<i>Ērūō,</i>	to put off;	<i>ērūi,</i>	<i>ērūtum</i>
<i>Indūō,</i>	to put on;	<i>indūi,</i>	<i>indūtum</i>
<i>Mētūō,</i>	to fear;	<i>mētūi,</i>	<i>mētūtum</i> (<i>rare</i>)
<i>Mīnūō,</i>	to lessen;	<i>mīnūi,</i>	<i>mīnūtum</i>
<i>Rūō,</i>	to rush;	<i>rūi,</i>	{ <i>rūtum</i> <i>rūtum</i>
<i>Stātūō,</i>	to determine;	<i>stātūi,</i>	<i>stātūtum</i>
<i>Tribūō,</i>	to give;	<i>tribūi,</i>	<i>tribūtum.</i>

<i>Solvō,</i>	to pay;	<i>sōlvi,</i>	<i>sōlūtum</i>
<i>Volvō,</i>	to roll;	<i>vōlvi,</i>	<i>vōlūtum.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

Xi and ctum.

<i>Flūō,</i>	to flow;	<i>flūxī,</i>	{ <i>flūctum</i> (rare) <i>flūxum</i>
<i>Strūō,</i>	to build;	<i>strūxī,</i>	<i>strūctum</i>
<i>Vivō,</i>	to live;	<i>vīxī,</i>	<i>vīctum.</i>

IV. EXTRANEOUS VERBS IN *Sco* AND *So*.1. *Sco*.

(1.) Belonging to the theme. (No Supine.)

<i>Discō,</i>	to learn;	<i>didici</i>
<i>Pōsco,</i>	to demand;	<i>pōpōscī.</i>

NOTE.—The compounds of *discō* and *pōsco* retain the reduplication.(2.)—INCHOATIVES (*ūi*) take forms of their theme.

<i>Cōnvālēscō,</i>	to grow strong;	<i>cōnvālūi</i>	
<i>Cōālēscō,</i>	to grow together;	<i>cōālūi,</i>	<i>cōālītum</i>
<i>Ōbdōrmiscō,</i>	to fall asleep;	<i>ōbdōrmīvi</i>	
	&c.		&c.

3. VERBS LENGTHENED IN *Sco*.

<i>Crēscō,</i>	to increase;	<i>crēvī,</i>	<i>crētum</i>
<i>Suēscō,</i>	to be accustomed;	<i>suēvī,</i>	<i>suētum</i>
<i>Nōscō,</i>	to learn;	<i>nōvī,</i>	<i>nōtum</i>
<i>Pāscō,</i>	to feed;	<i>pāvī,</i>	<i>pāstum</i>
<i>Quēscō,</i>	to rest;	<i>quēvī,</i>	<i>quētum.</i>

2. *So*.

(1.)

<i>Visō,</i>	to visit;	<i>vīsi</i>	
<i>Tēxō (cs),</i>	to weave;	<i>tēxūi,</i>	<i>tēxtum.</i>

(2.) *Ēssō, īvi—Itum.*

<i>Ārcēssō,</i>	to send for;	<i>ārcēssīvi,</i>	<i>ārcēssītum</i>
<i>Lācēssō,</i>	to provoke;	<i>lācēssīvi,</i>	<i>lācēssītum.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION (I).

ĪŌ—ĪVĪ—ĪTUM.

As, *Aūdīō*, to hear *aūdīvī* *aūdītum*.

(See § 37, p. 49.)

EXCEPTIONS.

1. SĪ and TUM (one *sum*).

(1.)

<i>Fūctō</i> ,	to prop;	<i>fūctī</i> ,	<i>fūctum</i>
<i>Sānctō</i> ,	to make sacred;	<i>sānctī</i> (cs),	<i>sānctum</i>
<i>Vinctō</i> ,	to bind;	<i>vinctī</i> (cs),	<i>vinctum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Haūctō</i> ,	to draw;	<i>haūctī</i> ,	<i>haūctum</i> .
-----------------	----------	-----------------	------------------

(3.)

<i>Sēnctō</i> ,	to feel;	<i>sēnctī</i> ,	<i>sēnctum</i> .
-----------------	----------	-----------------	------------------

2. IRREGULAR.

(1.)

<i>Āpērtō</i> (<i>pārtō</i> ?),	} to open;	<i>āpērtī</i> ,	<i>āpērtum</i>
<i>Rēpērtō</i> (<i>pērtō</i> ?),		<i>rēppērtī</i> ,	} <i>rēpērtum</i>
<i>Sālctō</i> ,	to leap;	<i>sālctī</i> ,	
		<i>sālctū</i> ,	<i>sālctum</i> .

(2.)

<i>Ēō</i> (§ 43),	to go;	<i>īvi</i> ,	<i>ītum</i>
<i>Sēpēltō</i> ,	to bury;	<i>sēpēltīvī</i> ,	<i>sēpēltum</i>
<i>Vēnctō</i> ,	to come;	<i>vēnī</i> ,	<i>vēntum</i> .

N.B.—*Ōpērtō* is conjugated like *āpērtō*, and *cōmpērtō* like *rēpērtō*.Obs. 1. Perfects of two syllables have the first syllable long: as, *vēnī*, *vidī*, *vici*, *lēgī*. Except these eight—

<i>Bibī</i>	<i>dēdī</i>	<i>fīdī</i>	<i>fūī</i>
<i>Stēī</i>	<i>stīī</i>	<i>scīdī</i>	<i>tūī</i> .

Obs. 2. Supines of two syllables have the first syllable long: as, *vīsum*, *lātum*, *lōtum*, *mōtum*.

Except these ten—

<i>Dātum</i>	<i>ītum</i>	<i>lītum</i>	<i>quītum</i>
<i>Rātum</i>	<i>rūtum</i>	<i>sātum</i>	<i>sītum.</i>

Cītum from *cio*; and *stātum* from *sisto*.

[*Cītum* from *cio* (4), and *stātum* from *sto* (1), have the first syllable long.]

§ 42. DEPONENT VERBS.

(§ 33, p. 43.)

Deponent Verbs are conjugated like Verbs Passive, but with Gerunds, Supines, and Active Participles, like Verbs Active. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u*, or Participle in *us*.

CONJUGATION OF TRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

1.	2.	3.	4.
<i>I wonder.</i>	<i>I fear.</i>	<i>I speak.</i>	<i>I bestow.</i>
<i>Mirōr</i>	<i>Vērōr</i>	<i>Lōquōr</i>	<i>Lārgiōr</i>
<i>Mirārīs</i>	<i>Vērērīs</i>	<i>Lōquērīs</i>	<i>Lārgirīs</i>
<i>or mirārē</i>	<i>or vērērē</i>	<i>or lōquērē</i>	<i>or lārgirē</i>
<i>Mirātūs sum</i>	<i>Vērītūs sum</i>	<i>Lōcūtūs sum</i>	<i>Lārgītūs sum</i>
<i>or fūi</i>	<i>or fūi</i>	<i>or fūi</i>	<i>or fūi</i>
<i>Mirārī</i>	<i>Vērērī</i>	<i>Lōquī</i>	<i>Lārgirī</i>
<i>Mirāndī</i>	<i>Vērēndī</i>	<i>Lōquēndī</i>	<i>Lārgiēndī</i>
<i>Mirāndō</i>	<i>Vērēndō</i>	<i>Lōquēndō</i>	<i>Lārgiēndō</i>
<i>Mirāndum</i>	<i>Vērēndum</i>	<i>Lōquēndum</i>	<i>Lārgiēndum</i>
<i>Mirātum</i>	<i>Vērītum</i>	<i>Lōcūtum</i>	<i>Lārgītum</i>
<i>Mirātū</i>	<i>Vērītū</i>	<i>Lōcūtū</i>	<i>Lārgītū</i>
<i>Mirāns</i>	<i>Vērēns</i>	<i>Lōquēns</i>	<i>Lārgiēns</i>
<i>Mirātūrūs</i>	<i>Vērītūrūs</i>	<i>Lōcūtūrūs</i>	<i>Lārgītūrūs</i>
<i>Mirātūs</i>	<i>Vērītūs</i>	<i>Lōcūtūs</i>	<i>Lārgītūs</i>
<i>Mirāndūs.</i>	<i>Vērēndūs.</i>	<i>Lōquēndūs.</i>	<i>Lārgiēndūs.</i>

CONJUGATION OF INTRANSITIVE DEONENTS.

1.	2.	3.	4.
<i>I wander.</i>		<i>I slip.</i>	<i>I fawn.</i>
Văgôr		Lăbôr	Blândiôr
Văgâris	<i>None.</i>	Lăbêris	Blândîris
or vâgârě		or lăbêrě	or blândîrě
Văgâtûs sum		Lăpsûs sum	Blânditûs sum
or fûi		or fûi	or fûi
Văgârî		Lăbî	Blândîrî
Văgândî		Lăbêndî	Blândîëndî
Văgândô		Lăbêndô	Blândîëndô
Văgândum		Lăbêndum	Blândîëndum
Văgâtum		Lăpsum	Blânditum
Văgâns		Lăbêns	Blândîêns
Văgâtûs		Lăpsûs	Blânditûs
Văgâtûrûs.		Lăpsûrûs.	Blânditûrûs.

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Transitive.

1.	2.
Cômîtôr, I accompany	Mêrêôr, I deserve
Sôlôr, I console.	Pôllicêôr, I promise.
3.	4.
See below.	Mêntîôr, I lie
	Môlîôr, I attempt.

Intransitive.

1.	3, 4.
Lătôr, I rejoice	See below.
Cûnctôr, I delay.	

VARIETIES OF FORM.

I. Verbs Deponent of the First Conjugation are all regularly conjugated.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Fātōr,</i>	to confess;	<i>fāssus sum</i>
<i>Mēdōr,</i>	to heal;	<i>(mēdicātus sum)</i>
<i>Mīsērōr,</i>	to pity;	<i>mīsērītus</i> and <i>mīsērtus sum</i>
<i>Rēōr,</i>	to think;	<i>rātus sum</i> (no Imperfect Conjunctive)
<i>Tūōr,</i>	to behold;	<i>tūltus sum—tūtus.</i>

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. Mutes.

(1) Labial.	<i>Lābōr,</i>	to slide;	<i>lāpsus sum</i>
(2) Gutturals.	<i>Fūngōr,</i>	to discharge;	<i>fūctus sum</i>
	<i>Lōquōr,</i>	to speak;	<i>lōcūtus sum (loquutus)</i>
	<i>Sēquōr,</i>	to follow;	<i>sēcūtus sum (sequutus).</i>
(3) Linguals.	{ <i>Āmplēctōr</i> } to embrace;		<i>āmplērus sum</i>
	{ (<i>plector</i>), }		
	<i>Nitōr,</i>	to strive;	<i>nīsus</i> or <i>nīrus sum</i>
	<i>Ūtōr,</i>	to use;	<i>ūsus sum.</i>

2. Liquid.

<i>Quērōr,</i>	to complain;	<i>quēstus sum.</i>
----------------	--------------	---------------------

3. Semivowels.

<i>Aggrēdōr (grādōr),</i>	to assail;	<i>āgrēssus sum</i>
<i>Frūōr,</i>	to enjoy;	<i>frūctus sum</i> or <i>frūtus sum</i>
<i>Mōrtōr,</i>	to die;	<i>mōrtūus sum, mōrtūrūs,</i> <i>mōriri</i> , poetical for <i>mōri</i> .
<i>Pātōr,</i>	to suffer;	<i>pāssus sum.</i>

4. Extraneous (*scor*).

<i>Āpiscōr,</i>	to obtain;	<i>āptus sum</i> (more frequently <i>ādīpīscōr</i>).
<i>Irāscōr,</i>	to be angry;	<i>(sūccēnsūi), irātus</i>
<i>Nāscōr,</i>	to be born;	<i>nātūs sum, nāscītūrūs</i>
<i>Ōblīvīscōr,</i>	to forget;	<i>ōblītūs sum</i>
<i>Pāscōr,</i>	to feed;	<i>pāstus sum</i>
<i>Prōfīcīscōr,</i>	to go;	<i>prōfēctus sum</i>
<i>Vēscōr,</i>	to eat	
<i>Ūlcīscōr,</i>	to avenge;	<i>ūltūs sum.</i>

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>Ēxpērīūr,</i>	to try ;	<i>ēxpērtus sum</i>
<i>Mētīūr,</i>	to measure;	<i>mēnsus sum</i>
<i>Ōrdīūr,</i>	to begin;	<i>ōrsus sum</i>
<i>Ōrtūr,</i>	to arise;	<i>ōrtus sum.</i>

In the present Indicative, *ŏrērīs, ŏrītūr,* and *ŏrīmūr* are used, like the Third Conjugation ; and in the Imperfect Conjunctive, *ŏrērēr* as well as *ŏrīrēr*. But *ādŏrītūr* is conjugated wholly according to the Fourth Conjugation, except the form *ādōrtus sum*.

So also *Pōtūr* (to be master of) has *pōtītūr, pōtīmūr,* in the Present Indicative, and *pōtērēr* in the Imperfect Conjunctive. See p. 69.

§ 43. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular or Anomalous Verbs are such as do not form their tenses according to the common rules : as—

1. *Pōssum, pōtēs, pōtūi, pōssē, pōtēns :* *to be able.*
2. *Ēō, īs, īvi or īi, īrē, ēūndī, ēūndō, ēūndum, ītum, iēns, ītūrūs :* *to go.*
3. *Vōlō, vīs, vōlūi, vēllē, vōlēndī, vōlēndō, vōlēndum, vōlēns :* *to be willing.*
4. *Nōlō, nōnvīs, nōlūi, nōllē, nōlēndī, nōlēndō, nōlēndum, nōlēns :* *to be unwilling.*
5. *Mālō, māvīs, mālūi, māllē, mālēndī, mālēndō, mālēndum, mālēns :* *to be more willing, or to have rather.*
6. *Fērō, fērs, tūli, ferrē, fērēndī, fērēndō, fērēndum, lātum, lātū, fērēns, lātūrūs :* *to bear or suffer.*
7. *Fīō, fīs, fāctus sum or fūi, fīērī, fāctūs, fāciēndūs :* *to be made or done.*
8. *Fērōr, fērrīs or ferrē, lātus sum or fūi, ferrī, lātūs, fērēndūs :* *to be borne or suffered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*I am able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōssum	pōtēs	pōtēt	Pōssūmus	pōtētis	pōssunt
Ēō	is	it	Imūs	itīs	ēunt
Vōlō	vis	vult	Vōlūmus	vultīs	vōlunt
Nōlō	nōnvīs	nōnvult	Nōlūmus	nōnvultīs	nōlunt
Mālō	māvis	māvult	Mālūmus	māvultīs	mālunt
Fērō	fērs	fert	Fērīmus	fertīs	fērunt
Fīō	fīs	fit	Fīmūs	fitīs	fiunt
Fērōr	fērris	fertūr	Fērīmur	fērīmīni	fēruntūr.
	or				
	ferrē				

2. IMPERFECT TENSE—*I was being able,*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōt-eram	-ērās	-ērāt	-ērāmūs	-ērātīs	-ērānt
Ī-bam	-bās	-bāt	-bāmūs	-bātīs	-bānt
Vōl-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbāt	-ēbāmūs	-ēbātīs	-ēbānt
Nōl-ēbam					
Māl-ēbam					
Fēr-ēbam					
Fī-ēbam	-ēbārīs	-ēbātūr	-ēbāmūr	-ēbāmīni	-ēbāntūr.
Fēr-ēbar					
	or				
	-ēbārē				

3 PERFECT TENSE—*I have been or was able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-ī	}	-istī	-īmūs	-istīs	-ērunt or -ērē
Ī-vī					
Vōlū-ī					
Nōlū-ī					
Mālū-ī					
Tūl-ī					
Fāct-us	}	sum	ēs	ēst	-ī sūmūs ēstīs sūnt, fūērunt or or or
Lāt-us		fūī	fūistī	fūit.	
			fūimūs	fūistīs	fūērē.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE—*I had been able, &c.**Singular.**Plural.*

Põtű-eram	} -ērās -ērāt.		-ērāmūs -ērātīs -ērānt
Ī-eram			
Völű-eram			
Nölű-eram			
Mälű-eram			
Tül-eram	} -eram -ērās -ērāt		-ī ērāmūs ērātīs ērānt
Fäct-ūs			
Lät-ūs			
	or or or		or or or
	fűeram fűērās fűerat		fűērāmūs fűērātīs fűērānt.

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*I shall or will be able, &c.**Singular.**Plural.*

Põt-ērő	-ērīs	-ērīt.		-ērīmūs	-ērītīs	-ērūnt
Ī-bő	-bīs	-bīt.		-bīmūs	-bītīs	-būnt
Völ-am	} -ēs	} -ēt		-ēmūs	-ētīs	-ēnt
Nöl-am						
Mäl-am						
Fēr-am						
Fī-am	} ērīs or -ērē	} ētūr		-ēmūr	-ēmīnī	-ēntūr.
Fēr-ār						

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*I shall have been able, &c.**Singular.**Plural.*

Põtű-ērō	}	ērīs	ērīt		-ērīmus	-ērītīs	-ērīnt	
Ī-ērō								
Völű-ērō								
Nölű-ērō								
Mälű-ērō								
Tül-ērō	}	ērō	ērīs	ērīt	-ī	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērūnt
Fäct-ūs								
Lät-ūs								
		or	or	or		or	or	or
		fűērō	fűērīs	fűērīt		fűērīmūs	fűērītīs	fűērīnt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
2.	3.	2.	3.
I itō	itō	Itē itōtē	ēuntō
Nōlī nōlitō		Nōlitē nōlitōtē	
Fēr fērtō	fērtō	Fērtē fērtōtē	fēruntō
Fī		Fītē	
Fēr-rē fēr-tōr	fēr-tōr	Fēr-īmīnī	fēr-ūntōr.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—I may or should be able, &c.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>			
Pōss-im	} -īs	-īt	-īmūs	-itīs	-īnt
Vēl-im					
Nōl-im					
Māl-im	} -ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ānt
Ē-am					
Fēr-am					
Fī-am					
Fēr-ār	-ārīs or -ārē -ātūr		-āmūr	-āmīnī	-āntūr.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE—I might or should be able, &c.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōss-em				
Ī-rem	-ēs	-ēt	-ēmūs	-ētīs
Vēll-em				
Nōll-em				
Māll-em				
Fērr-em				
Fīēr-em	-ērīs or -ērē	-ētūr	-ēmūr	-ēmīnī
Fērr-ēr				
			-ēntūr.	

3. PERFECT TENSE—I may or should have been able, &c.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-ērim				
Īv-ērim	-ērīs	-ērīt	-ērīmūs	-ērītīs
Vōlū-ērim				
Nōlū-ērim				
Mālū-ērim				
Tūl-ērim				
			-ērīnt.	

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
Fāct-us	sim	sīs	sīt	-ī sīmūs	sītis	sīnt
	or	or	or	or	or	or
Lāt-us	fūērim	fūērīs	fūērīt	fūērimūs	fūērītis	fūērīnt.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE—*I might or should have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-issem	-issēs	-issēt	-issēmūs	-issētis	-issēnt	
Īr-issem						
Vōlū-issem						
Nōlū-issem						
Mālū-issem						
Tūl-issem						
Fāct-ūs	ēssēm	ēssēs	ēssēt	ī ēssēmūs	ēssētis	ēssēnt
	or	or	or	or	or	or
Lāt-ūs	fūissem	fūissēs	fūissēt	fūissēmūs	fūissētis	fūissēnt.
		[sēt				

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSE.—*To be able, &c.*

Pōssē	Vellē	Māllē	Fīērī
Īrē	Nōllē	Ferrē	Fērri.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSE—*To have been able, &c.*

Pōtūissē	Vōlūissē	Mālūissē	Fāct-um ēssē or fūissē
Īvissē	Nōlūissē	Tūlissē	Lāt-um ēssē or fūissē.

FUTURE TENSE—*To be about to go, &c.*

Ītūrum ēssē	Fāctum iri
Lātūrum ēssē	Lātum iri.

Obs. 1. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

Obs. 2.—*Ēō* is used Impersonally in the Passive; and the short forms *īērūnt, issē, &c.*, are common. The Present Participle *īēns* makes G. *ēuntis*.

Ēdō, to eat, is also partly Irregular.

Ēdō, ēdis or ēs, ēdī, ēdērē or ēssē, ēdendī, ēdendō, ēdēndum, ēsum, ēsū, ēdēns, ēsūrūs.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

Sing.—**Ēdō, ēdis or ēs, ēdit or ēst ;**

Ēdimūs, ēditīs or ēstīs, ēdunt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

2. Ēde or ēs, ēditō or ēstō.

3. ēdito or ēstō

Plural.

2. Ēdite or ēstē, ēditōtē

or ēstōtē

3. ēduntō.

CONJUNCTIVE—Imperfect Active.

Singular.

Ēderem or ēsseti,

ēderēs or ēssēs,

ēderēt or ēssēt.

Plural.

Ēderēmūs or ēssēmūs,

ēderētīs or ēssētīs,

ēderēnt or

[ēssēnt.

The other Tenses are regular ; except that in the Passive Voice, *ēstūr* may be used for *ēditūr*, and *ēssētūr* for *ēdērētūr*.

Obs. 1. The *r* is doubled only in those tenses of *fērō*, where the *e* has been thrown out : as, *fērem, fērre, fēris*, for *fērrem, fērere, fērēris*.

Obs. 2. Like *ēdō* are declined, besides its compounds, *quēdō*, to be able, and *nēquēdō*, to be unable ; except that these two last have no Imperative Mood or Gerunda, or Future Participle. The compounds of *eo* generally take the shorter form of the Perfect in *ivi*, instead of *iui* : as, *rēdēdō, rēdīvi* ; *abēdō, abīvi*. The compounds that are made transitive by the preposition, as, *trānsēdō*, I cross, have also the Supine in *u*.

Obs. 3. *Fīō* is used as the Passive of *Fāciō*.

§ 44. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called Defective, that want, or are *deficient in*, many of the usual parts of a verb.

I. 1. *Aiō*, *I say*, or *say yes*, and *Īnquam* (*inquo*), *say I*.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunct.</i>		<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunct.</i>
Pres. 1.	<i>Aiō</i>			<i>Īnquam</i>	
2.	<i>Āis</i>	<i>Āiās</i>		<i>Īnquis</i>	<i>Īnquiās</i>
3.	<i>Āit</i>	<i>Āiāt</i>		<i>Īnquit</i>	<i>Īnquiāt</i>
Pl. 1.				<i>Īnquimūs</i>	
2.				<i>Īnquitis</i>	<i>Inquiātis</i>
3.	<i>Aiunt</i>	<i>Āiānt.</i>		<i>Īnquiunt</i>	<i>Īnquiānt.</i>
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Inquisti</i>		<i>inquit</i>	<i>inquistis</i>
	<i>First Future</i>	<i>Inquies</i>		<i>inquiet</i>	
	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Inquē</i>		<i>inquitō.</i>	

Participle of *aiō*, *aiēns*.

2. *Fārī* (*φημί*), *to speak* (mostly poetical).

<i>Fātūr</i>	<i>Fāndī</i>	<i>Fāns</i>
<i>Fātus sum</i> or <i>fui</i>	<i>Fāndō</i>	<i>Fātūs</i>
<i>Fārī</i>	<i>Fātū</i>	<i>Fāndūs.</i>

Also *First Future*, *Fābōr*; and *Imperative*, *Fārē*.

II. The Imperatives—

Sālvē, *sālvētē*, *hail*; Pres. *sālvēō*; Fut. *sālvēbīs*; Infin. *sālvērē*.

Vālē, *vālētē*, *farewell*; Infin., *vālērē*. From *vālēō*, a regular verb, *to be strong*.

III. The Præteritives, or Verbs conjugated only in the Præter-perfect, and the tenses derived from it—

Cōpī *I begin*, or *began*.

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Inf. and Part.</i>
<i>Cōpī</i>	<i>Cōpērim</i>	<i>Cōpissē</i>
<i>Cōpēram</i>	<i>Cōpisse</i>	<i>Cōptūrum ēssē</i>
<i>Cōpērō</i>		<i>Cōptūrū.</i>

Mēmīni (*mens*, *μνήσκω*), *I minded*, or (have minded, i. e.), *remember*.

<i>Mēmīni</i>	<i>Mēmīnerim</i>	<i>Mēmīnissē</i>
<i>Mēmīneram</i>	<i>Mēmīnissem</i>	(<i>Mēmīnens</i>).
<i>Mēmīnerō.</i>		

Imperat.—*Mēmētō*

Mēmētōtō.

Nōvi, (I have learnt, and therefore) *I know*. From *noσco*, *I learn*.

<i>Nōvi</i>	<i>Nōvērim</i> (<i>nōrim</i>)	<i>Nōyissē</i> (<i>nōsse</i>).
<i>Nōvēram</i> (<i>nōram</i>)	<i>Nōvissem</i>	
<i>Nōvērō</i>		

(See § 40, II. 1, *Obs.* 1, p. 70.)

Ōdī, *I hate.*

Ōdī
Ōdēram
Ōdērō.

Ōdērim
Ōdissem

Ōdisse
Osurum esse

§ 45. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(See above, § 33, p. 42.)

There are two main classes of Impersonal Verbs :—

- I. Active Impersonals, which have no Passive Voice, except some passive forms of the Perfect Active.
- II. Passive Impersonals, which constitute the Passive Voice of Active Intransitives (§ 33, p. 43).

I. ACTIVE IMPERSONALS.

1. CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunct.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Ōpōrtēt	Ōpōrtēāt	Ōpōrtērē
<i>Imperf.</i>	Ōpōrtēbāt	Ōpōrtērēt	
<i>Perf.</i>	Ōpōrtūit	Ōpōrtūērīt	Ōpōrtūissē.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Ōpōrtūērāt	Ōpōrtūissēt.	
<i>1st Fut.</i>	Ōpōrtēbīt		
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	Ōpōrtūērīt.		

The Persons are expressed by cases after the Verb ; as—

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Singular.

1. Ōpōrtēt mē, *it behoves me, or I ought.*
2. Ōpōrtēt tē, *it behoves thee, or thou ought.*
3. Ōpōrtēt ēum, *it behoves him, or he ought.*

Plural.

1. Ōpōrtēt nōs, *it behoves us, or we ought.*
2. Ōpōrtēt vōs, *it behoves you, or ye ought.*
3. Ōpōrtēt ēōs, *it behoves them, or they ought.*

(And so in the other Tenses.)

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Licet, it is lawful;
Opōrtet, it behoves;
Tædet, it irketh;

Dæcet, it becomes;

licuit and *licitum est*.
oportuit.
(tædūt, tæsum est),
pertæsum est.
dæcūt.

a. Ordinary Verbs.

Juvāt, it delights;

Placēt, it pleases (*placuit* and *placitum est*).

II. PASSIVE IMPERSONALS.

1. ORDINARY CONJUGATION.

Currītūr from *Currō*, *I run*.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
<i>Præs.</i>	<i>Currītūr</i>	<i>Currātūr</i>	<i>Cūrri</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Currēbātūr</i>	<i>Currērētūr</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Cūsum ēst</i> or <i>fuit</i>	<i>Cūsum sit</i> or <i>fuerit</i>	<i>Cūsum eesse</i> or <i>fuisse</i> .
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Cūsum erat</i> or <i>fuerat</i>	<i>Cūsum esset</i> or <i>fuisse</i> .	
<i>1st Fut.</i>	<i>Currētūr</i>		
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Cūsum erit</i> or <i>fuerit</i> .		<i>Cūsum iri.</i>

The Persons are expressed by the Ablative Case with the preposition *a* or *ab* after the verb: as—

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Singular.

- Currītūr ā mē*, it is run by me, or *I run*.
- Currītūr ā tē*, it is run by you, or *you run*.
- Currītūr āb eō*, it is run by him, or *he runs*.

Plural.

- Currītūr ā nobis*, it is run by us, or *we run*.
- Currītūr ā vobis*, it is run by you, or *ye run*.
- Currītūr āb iis*, it is run by them, or *they run*.

2. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The Neuter of the Participles in *-dus* is used in the same way, except that it usually has the Dative after it: as—

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Singular.

1. *Currendum est mihi*, it must be run by me, or I must run.
2. *Currendum est tibi*, it must be run by you, or you must run.
3. *Currendum est ei*, it must be run by him, or he must run.

Plural.

1. *Currendum est nobis*, it must be run by us, or we must run.
2. *Currendum est vobis*, it must be run by you, or you must run.
3. *Currendum est eis*, it must be run by them, or they must run.

And so in the other Tenses, compare the Periphrastic Conjugation above.

Obs. The Present Conjunctive of Impersonals is used for the Imperative: as, *placēat tibi*, please; *currātūr ā tē*, run thou.

§ 46. CONCLUDING REMARKS ON VERBS.

I. DERIVED VERBS.

The two chief classes of Derived Verbs are Frequentatives, and Inceptives.

1. Frequentatives denote the repetition of an action, i. e., to do often or rapidly, end in *-ito*, *-to*, *-tor*, and are of the First Conjugation: as—

- (1) *Agito*, to agitate, from *ago*.
Rogito, to ask often, from *rogo*.
Volito, to flutter, from *volō*.
- (2) *Canto*, to sing often, from *cāno*.
Voluto, to roll often, from *volvo*.
- (3) *Minitor*, to threaten often, from *minor*.
Secutor, to follow often, from *sequor*.
&c. *&c.*

2. Inceptives or Inchoatives express the beginning of an action, end in *-āscō*, *-ēscō*, and *-iscō*, and are of the Third Conjugation: as—

- (1.) Derived from Verbs—

- Cālēscō*, to grow warm, from *cālēō* (*cales*).
Cōtīcēscō, to begin to be silent, from *cōtīcēō* (*contices*).
Cōnvālēscō, to grow strong, from *cōnvālēō* (*convales*).

Trēmiscō, to begin to tremble, from *trēmō* (*tremis*).

Sciscō, to begin to know, from *scīō* (*scis*).

(2.) Derived from Nouns—

Pūērāscō, to become a boy, from *pūēr*.

Mīlēsō, to become mild, from *mīlīs*.

For Verbs compounded with Prepositions see p. 100.

II. VERBS SIMILAR IN FORM BUT DIFFERENT IN MEANING.

There are several verbs in Latin, which are either identical or similar in form, but are greatly or totally different in meaning and inflection.

1. VERBS IDENTICAL IN FORM.

Appēllō, 1. to name;

Appēllō (*pello*), 3. to put to shore.

Cōmpēllō, 1. to address;

Cōmpēllō (*pello*), 3. to drive together.

Cōllīgō (*ligo*), 1. to bind together;

Cōllīgō (*lego*), 3. to collect.

Fūndō, 1. to found;

Fūndō, 3. to pour.

Māndō, 1. (*manus do*) to give in charge;

Māndō, 3. to champ.

Sāltō, 4. to leap (*sālūi*, *sālūtum*);

Sāltō, 4. to salt (*sālūtum* from *sal*).

Vōlō, 1. to fly;

Vōlō, irreg. to will.

2. VERBS IDENTICAL IN SPELLING, BUT UNLIKE IN QUANTITY.

Dīcō, 1. to dedicate;

Dīcō, 3. to say.

Ēdō, irreg. to eat;

Ēdō, 3. to utter (*ē*, *dō*).

Ēdūcō, 1. to educate;

Ēdūcō, 3. to lead out (*duco*).

Lēgō, 3. to read;

Lēgō, 1. to send as ambassador.

Lābō, 1. to totter;

Lābōr, 3. to slide.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS SIMILAR IN FORM.

Transitive.

Cādō, 3. to strike;

Dōcēō, 2. to teach;

Fūgō, 1. to chase;

Pārō, 1. to prepare;

Pēndō, 3. to weigh;

Plācō, 1. to appease;

Sēdō, 1. to seat, assuage;

Tētō, 2. to attempt;

Intransitive.

Cādō, 3. to fall.

Discō, 3. to learn.

Fūgō, 3. to flee.

Pārō, 2. to obey.

Pēndō, 2. to hang.

Plācō, 2. to please.

Sēdō, 3. to sit.

Tēndō, 3. to strive (also, Transitive).

Many Verbs also, of dissimilar forms, have meanings that *seem* alike, but really differ in being transitive or intransitive, i.e., in requiring an accusative after them, or not: as—

Transitive.

Ūrō, 3. to burn, i.e. straw, &c.

Aūgēō, 2. to increase, i.e. pay, &c.

Intransitive.

Ārdēō, 2. to burn.

Crēscō, 3. to increase.

CHAPTER VII.

PARTICLES OR UNDECLINED PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 47. PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are Parts of Speech most commonly *set before** Nouns, to express relations more exactly or otherwise than cases do: as, *ad dextram*, to the right hand; or else joined in composition: as, *indoctus*, unlearned; *abeo*, to go away.

Most Prepositions govern the Accusative case; but some govern the Ablative.

I. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Ad, to, at, for.

Adversum, adversus, towards, against.

Ante, before.

Apud, with, or amongst.

Circa, circum, circiter, around.

Cis, citra, on this side.

Contra, opposite to, against.

Erga, towards.

Extra, outside of, beyond.

Infra, beneath.

Inter, between, or among.

Intra, within.

Juxta, close to, along with.

Ob, towards, or because of.

Penēs, in the power of.

Per, through, or over.

Pone, behind.

Post, behind, or after.

Præter, beyond, before, besides.

Prope, near to.

Propter, near, on account of.

Secundum, next to, according to.

Supra, above, or beyond.

Trans, across.

Ultra, beyond.

Versus, towards.

The Memorial lines are—

Exigunt accūsativum,
Antē, apud, ad, adversum,
Circā, circiter, et circum,
Cis, et citrā, contrā, extrā,
Ērgā, infrā, intēr, intrā,

Queis ob jūnxērīs, et prætēr,
Juxtā, penēs, prōpē, prōptēr,
Ponē, pēr, et pōst, et suprà,
Trāns, secūndūm, vērsūs, ul-
trā.

* *Præpōsitiō.*

II. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

1. Pure Prepositions.

<i>A, ab, abs, from, or by.</i>	<i>E, ex, out of, from.</i>
<i>Absque, without.</i>	<i>Præ, in front of, before.</i>
<i>Cum, together with.</i>	<i>Pro, before, or instead of.</i>
<i>De, down from, concerning.</i>	

2. Adverbs used as Prepositions.

<i>Clam, without the knowledge of.</i>	<i>Procul, far from.</i>
<i>Coram, } in the presence of.</i>	<i>Tenus, as far as.</i>
<i>Palam }</i>	

The Memorial lines are—

<i>Ablatīvum rēgunt hęc:</i>	<i>Ēt cōrām, clam, ēt prōcūl hīs,</i>
<i>Ā. q̄b, ābsquē, cum, ēt dē,</i>	<i>Pālām, tēnūs-quē jūnxērīs.</i>
<i>Ē, ēx, sīnē, prō, ēt prā,</i>	

III. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

Four Prepositions, *In, sūb, sūbtēr, and sūpēr*, govern both an Accusative and an Ablative,—an Accusative, when *motion towards* is signified, and an Ablative, when *position* is implied.

In.—1. Into, towards, against.

as, (Ire) in urbem, (to go) into the city; in noctem, towards night; in Verrem, against Verres.

2. In.

as, (Esse) in urbe, (to be) in the city; in ære alieno, in debt.

Sūb.—1. Under, near to.

as, (Ire) sub umbram, (to go) under the shade; (Ire) sub montem, (to go) near the mountain.

2. Under, at the foot of.

as, (Esse) sub divo, (to be) under the open air; (Esse) sub mœnibus, (to be) at the foot of the walls.

Sūbtēr.—1. Beneath.

as, (Ire) subter pineta, (to go) beneath the pine wood.

2. Beneath.

as, (Esse) subter litore, (to be) beneath the shore.

Sūpēr.—1. Over, beyond.

as, *Super vallum*, over a wall; *Super omnia*, beyond all things.

2. Upon, concerning.

as, *Super foco*, upon the hearth; *Super Priamo*, concerning Priam.

Obs. 1. *Tenus* also governs a genitive, and is set after its case: as, *aurium tenus*, up to the ears. *Versus* is set after its case: as, *Brundisium versus*, towards Brindisi.

Obs. 2. All Prepositions of two syllables, except *absque*, *apud*, *erga*, *penes*, and *sine*, are also used as adverbs: as, *ante*, *circum*, *contra*, &c.

Obs. 3. The following Prepositions appear only in composition:—

1. *Āmbi-*, shortened to *amb-*, *am*, *an*, around: as—

Āmbāgēs, *āmplēctōr*, *ānquīrō*, *āncēps*, &c.

2. *Dis-* (duo), asunder, in different directions: as—

Dīsjungō, *dīrtmō*, *dīffērō*, *dīmōvēō*, &c.

3. *Re-* (or *red-*), back: as—

Rēddō, *rēdēō*.

NOTE.—*Rētūlī*, *rēppērī*, and *rēppūlī* are for *retetuli*, *repeperi*, *repepuli*.

4. *Ve-* or *veh-* (privative): as—

Vēcōrs, senseless; *vēsānus*, mad: but *vēhēmēns*, strong-minded, vehement, &c.

§ 48. WORDS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

I. CHANGES OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

Prepositions, when they are combined with other words in composition, are very often modified in form, in order to unite better with the words with which they are compounded.

These changes are either alteration of the letters of the Preposition, omission of one of the letters (elision), or the insertion of an additional letter.

1. Alteration of form.

1. *Cum* is always *con* in composition: as, *cōnvōlvō*, *cōndōnō*.

2. The last letter of the Preposition is often *assimilated* to the first letter of the word : as—

<i>Accēdō</i> (ad-cedo)	<i>Irrūō</i> (in-ruo)
<i>Ac-quirō</i> (ad-quæro)	<i>Occurrō</i> (ob-curro)
<i>Āffērō</i> , or <i>ādfērō</i>	<i>Ōffērō</i> (ob-fero)
<i>Assūmō</i> , or <i>ādsūmō</i>	<i>Ōppōnō</i> (ob-pono)
<i>Attūli</i> (ad-tuli)	<i>Pēllitō</i> (per-lacio)
<i>Cōrrūmpō</i> (con-rumpo)	<i>Succūmbō</i> (sub-cūmbō)
<i>Diffērō</i> (dis-fero)	<i>Sūfficiō</i> (sub-facio)
<i>Ēffundō</i> (ex fundo)	<i>Sūmmōvērō</i> , or <i>sub-mōvērō</i>
<i>Illūdō</i> (in-ludo)	<i>Sūppōnō</i> (sub-pono)
<i>Intēlligō</i> (inter-lego)	<i>Sūrrīpiō</i> , or <i>subripio</i> .

3. *N* becomes *m* before *b*, *m*, and *p* : as—

<i>Cōmbibō</i> (con-bibo)	<i>Imbibō</i> (in-bibo)
<i>Cōmmōvērō</i> (con-moveo)	<i>Immittō</i> (in-mitto)
<i>Cōmpōnō</i> (con-pono)	<i>Impēllō</i> (in-pello).

On the other hand, *vēnūdō* (venum-do).

But *circūdō*, *circūpōnō*, and other words compounded with *circum*.

4. *Āgnōscō* (ad-nosco). *Cōgnōscō* (con-nosco). *Ignōscō* (in-nosco).

2. Elision.

<i>Amplēctōr</i> (ambi-plector)	<i>Ōmittō</i> (ob-mitto)
<i>Ancēps</i> (amb-caput)	<i>Ōstēndō</i> (obs-tendo)
<i>Cōgō</i> (con-ago)	<i>Trādō</i> (trans-do)
<i>Cōhibērō</i> (con-habeo)	<i>Trānscribō</i> (trans-scribo)
<i>Dīmōvērō</i> (dis-moveo)	

3. Insertion.

<i>Prōdērō</i> (pro-eo)	<i>Sēditō</i> (se-eo, itum)
<i>Prōdēst</i> (pro-est)	<i>Ingrūō</i> (in-ruo).

II. CHANGES OF VERBS IN COMPOSITION.

The following changes of letters take place in compounded Verbs—

1. A INTO E.

<i>Arcērō</i> ,	<i>Coerceo</i> , <i>exerceo</i> .
(<i>Cāndō</i>),	<i>Accendo</i> , <i>incendo</i> .
<i>Dāmnō</i> ,	<i>Condemno</i> .
<i>Grādīōr</i> ,	<i>Aggredior</i> , <i>congregior</i> , <i>ingredior</i> , <i>progreior</i> .

<i>Pātor,</i>	<i>Perpetior.</i>
<i>Sācrō,</i>	<i>Consecro, obsecro.</i>
<i>Scāndō,</i>	<i>Ascendo, descendo.</i>
<i>Spārgō,</i>	<i>Aspergo, dispergo.</i>

2. A INTO I.

<i>Āgō,</i>	<i>Abigo, adigo, exigo. But perago, (-ēgi, -āctum).</i>
<i>Cādō,</i>	<i>Accido, concido, decido, incido, occido, (-cidi, -cāsum).</i>
<i>Cānō,</i>	<i>Concino, (-cinui, -centum).</i>
<i>Cāptō,</i>	<i>Accipio, concipio, decipio, excipio, incipio, percipio, præcipio, recipio, suscipio, (-cepi, -ceptum).</i>
<i>Fāciō,</i>	<i>Afficio, conficio, efficio, perficio, præficio, sufficio, (-feci, -fectum). But benefacio, (-feci, -factum).</i>
<i>Fātēor,</i>	<i>Confiteor, profiteor, (-fessus).</i>
<i>Hābēō,</i>	<i>Adhibeo, exhibeo, perhibeo, prohibeo. But posthabeo.</i>
<i>Jāciō,</i>	<i>Abjicio, adjicio, conjicio, dijicio, ejicio, injicio, objicio, projicio, subjicio, transjicio, (-jeci, -jectum).</i>
<i>(Lāciō),</i>	<i>Allicio, elicio, pellicio.</i>
<i>Lātēō,</i>	<i>Deliteo.</i>
<i>Plācēō,</i>	<i>Displaceo. But perplaceo.</i>
<i>Rāptō,</i>	<i>Arripio, corripio, deripio, diripio, eripio, (-ripui, -rēptum).</i>
<i>Sālīō,</i>	<i>Assilio, desilio, exsilio, insilio, (-silui or sili, -sultum).</i>
<i>Stātūō,</i>	<i>Constituo, instituo, restituo.</i>
<i>Tācēō,</i>	<i>Conticeo.</i>
<i>Tāngō,</i>	<i>Attingo, contingo, (tigi, -tactum).</i>

3. A INTO U.

<i>Sālīō,</i>	<i>Exsulto, insulto.</i>
<i>Quātīō,</i>	<i>Discutio, excutio, incutio, percutio, (-cussi, -cussum).</i>

4. E INTO I.

<i>Ēgēō,</i>	<i>Indigeo.</i>
<i>Ēmō,</i>	<i>Adimo, dirimo, eximo, interimo, perimo, redimo, (-emi, -emptum). But coemo, demo (for de-imo).</i>
<i>Lēgō,</i>	<i>Colligo, diligo, eligo, intelligo, negligo, in the sense of, to gather.' But relego, perlego, in the sense of 'to read.'</i>
<i>Prēmō,</i>	<i>Comprimo, exprimo, opprimo, supprimo, (-pressi, -pressum).</i>
<i>(Spēcīō),</i>	<i>Aspicio, conspicio, despicio, inspicio, respicio, (-spexi, -spectum).</i>
<i>Sēdēō,</i>	<i>Assideo, consideo, obsideo, (-sedi, -sessum).</i>
<i>Tēnēō,</i>	<i>Attineo, contineo, detineo, obtineo, pertineo, retineo, sustineo, (-tinui, -tentum).</i>

So also *Dēdi* (do), *addidi*, &c. (See pp. 74, 79.)

Stēti (sto), *astiti*, &c. (See p. 74.)

But Perfects, with a long Penultima, as *feci, jeci*, &c., retain the E.

5. *Æ* INTO I.

<i>Cædō,</i>	<i>Excido, occido.</i>
<i>Quæro,</i>	<i>Acquiro, inquirō.</i>
<i>Lædō,</i>	<i>Elido, illido.</i>

6. AU INTO O, U, E.

<i>Plaūdō,</i>	<i>Explodo.</i>
<i>Claūdō,</i>	<i>Concludo, excludo; includo; recludo.</i>
<i>Aūdō,</i>	<i>Obedio.</i>

NOTE.—Reduplication of the Perfect is not retained in compounded Verbs: as, *compūli, contūdi, impendi, occidi, occidi.*

Except in compounds of *do, disco, posco, and sto*: as, *addidi, condidi, circumdēdi, &c.*; *addidici, edidici, &c.*; *expōposci, rēpōposci, &c.*; *adstīti, constīti, circumstēti, &c.*; and in *rēttūli, rēppērī, and rēppūli.* See above, p. 100.

§ 49. ADVERBS.

An Adverb is used with a Verb, as an Adjective with a Substantive: as, *fōrtitēr pūgnāt*, he fights bravely, like *fōrtis pūgnātōr*, a brave combatant; *campūs lātē pātēt*, the plain spreads far and wide, like *lātūs cāmpūs*, a vast plain.

Adverbs are also used to qualify Adjectives and other words: as, *māgis oppōrtūnūs* (more seasonable); *sātīs bēne scripsit* (he wrote sufficiently well),—where *sātīs* qualifies *bēne*.

I. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

1. Some Adverbs are Primitive, that is, are not derived from other Latin words: as, *sāt* or *sātīs*, *sēmēl*, *bīs*, *nūnc*, *tūm*, *antē*, *pōst*, *crās*, *nūn*.

2. But most are derived directly from some other word, and are formed chiefly as follows:—

(1.) Ending in *ē* or *ō*,—from Adjectives of the First Declension in *us* or *er*: as—

<i>Lōngē</i> (far),	from <i>lōngūs</i>	<i>Bēnē</i> (well),	from <i>bōnūs</i>
<i>Rēctē</i> (rightly),	from <i>rēctūs</i>	<i>Mālē</i> (badly),	from <i>mālūs</i>
<i>Pūlchrē</i> (beautifully),	from <i>pūlchēr</i>	<i>Fālso</i> (falsely),	from <i>fālso</i>
<i>Misērē</i> (wretchedly),	from <i>misēr</i>	<i>Crēbrō</i> (often),	from <i>crēbēr</i> .

(2.) Ending in *tēr*, from Adjectives of the Second Declension in

er, and of the Third with any termination, though rarely with *is*, and from Adjectival Participles in *ns*: as—

<i>Ācrītēr</i> (sharply), from <i>ācēr</i>	<i>Fēlīctēr</i> (happily), from <i>fēlīx</i>
<i>Cēlērītēr</i> (quickly), from <i>cēlēr</i>	<i>Ēlēgāntēr</i> (elegantly), from <i>ēlēgāns</i>
<i>Fōrtītēr</i> (bravely), from <i>fōrtīs</i>	<i>Āmāntēr</i> (lovingly) from <i>āmāns</i>

(3.) Neuters of Adjectives, generally ending in *um* or *ē*: as—

<i>Mūltum</i> (much), from <i>mūltūs</i>	<i>Sūblīmē</i> (on high), from <i>sūblīmīs</i>
<i>Pārūm</i> (too little), from <i>pārūvs</i>	<i>Plērūmqūē</i> (generally), from <i>plērūsqūē</i> .
<i>Prīmum</i> (first), from <i>primus</i>	
<i>Fācīlē</i> (easily), from <i>fācīlis</i>	

(4.) Ablatives or other cases of Nouns, that have acquired an Adverbial use: as—

<i>Fōrtē</i> , by chance,	<i>Dīū</i> , by day, long	<i>Frūstrā</i> , in vain
<i>Intūtō</i> , in the beginning	<i>Nōctū</i> , by night	<i>Grātīs</i> , gratuitously.

(5.) Ending in *in*, and mostly derived from Participles: as—

Pāssim, here and there, from *pāndō*. | *Sēnsim*, gradually, from *sēntrō*.

(6.) Ending in *itūs* or *us*, chiefly derived from Nouns, and denoting origin: as—

<i>Cēlītūs</i> , from heaven	<i>Intūs</i> , within
<i>Fūndītūs</i> , from the bottom	<i>Sūbtūs</i> , below.

(7.) From combinations of words: as—

<i>Intērēā</i> (meanwhile), from <i>intēr ēa</i>	<i>Māgnūpērē</i> (greatly), from <i>māgno</i>
<i>Nēquīcquam</i> (in vain), from <i>nē quīcquam</i>	<i>ŏpēre</i>
	<i>Scīlīcēt</i> (forsooth), from <i>scire līcēt</i> .

II. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives are usually compared by taking the Neuter of the Adjective's Comparative, and by changing *mus* of the Superlative into *me*: as—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Dōctē</i> , learnedly (<i>dōctūs</i>);	<i>dōctiūs</i>	<i>dōctissimē</i>
<i>Fōrtītēr</i> , bravely (<i>fōrtīs</i>);	<i>fōrtiūs</i>	<i>fōrtissimē</i>
<i>Ācrītēr</i> , sharply (<i>ācēr</i>);	<i>ācriūs</i>	<i>ācērrimē</i>
<i>Fācīlē</i> , easily (<i>fācīlis</i>);	<i>fāciliūs</i>	<i>fācillimē</i> .

Accordingly, the Adverbs derived from Adjectives, which are irregularly compared, have also irregular Comparatives and Superlatives: as—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Bēnē</i> , well (<i>bōnūs</i>)	<i>mēliūs</i>	<i>ōptimē</i>
<i>Māgnōpērē</i> , greatly (<i>māgnūs</i>)	<i>māgīs</i>	<i>māximē</i>
<i>Mālē</i> , badly (<i>mālūs</i>)	<i>pējūs</i>	<i>pēssimē</i>
<i>Mūltum</i> , much (<i>mūltūs</i>)	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>Pārum</i> , little (<i>pārvūs</i>)	<i>mīnūs</i>	<i>mīnimē</i>
(<i>dētēriōr</i>)	<i>dētēriūs</i> , worse	<i>dētērrimē</i>
(<i>ōcīōr</i>)	<i>ōcīūs</i> , more quickly	<i>ōcissimē</i>
(<i>pōtīōr</i>)	<i>pōtīūs</i> , rather	<i>pōtissimum</i>
(<i>prīōr</i>)	<i>prīūs</i> , before	<i>primum</i> and <i>primō</i> .

Of Adverbs not derived from Adjectives, the following are thus compared—

<i>Dīū</i> , long	<i>dīūtīūs</i>	<i>dīūtissimē</i>
<i>Sēpē</i> , often	<i>sēpiūs</i>	<i>sēpissimē</i> .

III. KINDS OF ADVERBS.

There are two main classes of Adverbs—

1. Pure Adverbs, or such as have only an Adverbial use, i. e., are only employed to qualify other words.
2. Conjunctive Adverbs, or such as are also employed to link clauses and sentences together.

(1.) Pure Adverbs are of four kinds: viz.—

1. Of manner or degree.
2. Of place.
3. Of time.
4. Of number.

A. Adverbs of Manner generally end in *ē*, *ō*, *tēr*, and *ē*, as mentioned above, p. 103.

There are also, besides these,

The demonstratives—

<i>Adēo</i> (<i>ad eo</i>), to such an extent	<i>Sic</i> (<i>hic</i>), thus
<i>Itā</i> (<i>is</i>), so.	<i>Tām</i> (<i>To</i> , τὸ), so very.

The negatives—

<i>Nōn</i> , not	<i>Nē</i> (<i>μη</i>), (do) not
<i>Haūd</i> (<i>οὐδέ</i>), not at all.	<i>Nīhīl</i> , in no wise.
<i>Nē</i> — <i>quīdem</i> , not even. The word negatived should stand between <i>nē</i> and <i>quīdem</i> : as, <i>Nē Cēsār quīdem</i> , not even Cæsar.	

B. Adverbs of Place are chiefly derived from Pronouns: as—

<i>Hic</i> , here	<i>Ībi</i> (<i>is</i>), there	<i>Illic</i> , there
<i>Hinc</i> , hence	<i>Indē</i> (<i>is</i>), thence	<i>Illicinc</i> , thence
<i>Hūc</i> , hither.	<i>Ēō</i> , thither.	<i>Illūc</i> , thither.
<i>Ūbiquē</i> , everywhere	<i>Ūbicūquē</i> , wherever	
<i>Ūndiquē</i> , from all sides.	<i>Quōcūquē</i> , whithersoever.	

c. Adverbs of Time answer the questions—

a. When? as—

<i>Nūnc</i> , now	<i>Prīdē</i> (<i>præ, diei</i>), the day before
<i>Hōdiē</i> (<i>hoc die</i>), to-day	<i>Pōstridē</i> (<i>posteri diei</i>), the day after
<i>Tūc</i> , tūc, then	<i>Crās</i> , to-morrow
<i>Ōlim</i> (<i>ollus, ille</i>), formerly	<i>Vēspērī</i> , in the evening
<i>Quōndam</i> (<i>quam-dam</i>), once	<i>Sēmpēr</i> , always.
&c.	&c.

b. How long? or how often?

<i>Quōtidīē</i> (<i>quoti diei</i>), every day	<i>Itērum</i> , a second time
<i>Sāpē</i> , often	<i>Rārō</i> , seldom
<i>Tōtīēs</i> , so often	<i>Dīu</i> (<i>dies</i>), a long time
<i>Nōnnūquam</i> , sometimes	<i>Ādhūc</i> (<i>ād hūc</i>), until now.
<i>Plērumque</i> (<i>plerique</i>), generally.	

d. Numeral Adverbs answer the question—

How many times? as—

Sēmēl, once, *bis*, twice, *tēr*, thrice, &c.

(2.) Conjunctional Adverbs are of three kinds: viz.—

1. Interrogative.
2. Relative.
3. Affirmative, Negative, and Optative.

A. Interrogative Adverbs, which are often used in Latin where we find none in English, are chiefly as follows—

a. In Single Questions.

-*Nē* (enclitic, * attached to the most emphatic word in the sentence), for general questions.

Num, Is it? expecting the answer, *No*.

Nōnnē (*non-ne*), *Is* it not? expecting the answer, *Yes*.

Cur, why?

Quōmōdō (*quo modo*), *How*?

Quādo, when?

Quā, where?

Ūndē, whence?

Quō, whither?

Ūbi, where? when?

* *Quē*, *nē*, and *ē* are called enclitics, i. e. *inclining* to or *leaning back upon* the word they are attached to: as, *Rēgēsque—Hōmīnēsne—fērāve*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions unite by disjoining: as—

Aūt (*ad, adverbis*)
Vēl (*velis, i.e., whether you will*) } ... { *aūt*
vēl } either—or.
Vē (*enclitic, a short form of vel*)
Sivē (*seū*) . . . *sivē* (*seū*), whether—or.

III. Adversative Conjunctions introduce opposing words or statements: as—

Āt, yet, but *Āūtem*, but *Vērum* }
Sēd, but *Tāmēn* (*tam*), nevertheless *Vērō* } but indeed.

IV. Inferential Conjunctions introduce inferences or conclusions: as—

Itaque }
Ergō } therefore *Quōcircā* (*quo, circa*) }
Igitur } *Quārē* } wherefore.
Ēō (*is*), on that account

V. Final and Consecutive Conjunctions introduce statements of a purpose, or a result of what goes before: as—

a. Final.

Ūt, in order that *Nē*, that—not, lest
Quō, to the end that (chiefly with comparatives) *Quōmīnūs* (*quo minus*), that—not, [by which the less
Nēvē—*neū*, that neither—nor.

b. Consecutive.

Ūt, that, so that. *Quīn* (*qui-ne*), that not, but that.

VI. Causal Conjunctions introduce a cause or reason: as—

Nam
Ēnim } for *Quum* } since *Quīd*, }
Nāmqūē } *Quōnīam* } *Quōd* } because.
Ētēnim (*et enim*) }

VII. Conditional Conjunctions introduce a condition: as—

Sī, if *Nī* } unless. *Sīn* (*si ne*), but if.
Nīsī }

VIII. Concessive Conjunctions introduce a concession: as—

Ētsī (*et si*)
Licēt (*Impers. verb*) }
Quāquam (*quam quam*) } although.
Quum }

IX. Comparative Conjunctions introduce a comparison: as—

<i>Ūt</i>	} as	<i>Sicūt (sic ut)</i> , just as
<i>Quemādmodum (quem ad modum)</i>		<i>Vēlūt (vel ut)</i> , even as.
<i>Ceū</i>		

X. Temporal Conjunctions introduce statements of time: as—

<i>Quum (qui)</i>	} when	<i>Dum (diu)</i> , whilst, until	<i>Pōstquam</i> , after that
<i>Quāndō</i>		<i>Dōnēc</i> , until.	<i>Quōtīēs (quot)</i> , as
<i>Ūt</i>		<i>Prīusquam</i> } before	often as.
<i>Ūbī</i>		<i>Antēquam</i> } that	<i>Ūt</i> , since

Obs. When Conjunctions couple *words*, they stand between the words they couple; when they couple *clauses* or *sentences*, they stand at the *beginning* of the *second* clause or sentence: as, *cōsūlēs ēt prætōrēs*, consuls and prætors; *cōsūlēs cōsūlūt, at prætōrēs prætūrūt*, the consuls consult, but the prætors precede. An enclitic is attached to the second of two words, or the first word of the second clause: as—

Sēnātūs pōpūlūsqūē Rōmānūs, the Roman senate and people.

Cōnticūere omnēs, intētiqūē ōrā tēnēbānt, all were still and kept their faces fixed.

§ 51. INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a part of speech that is *thrown into* a sentence (*intējēctum*) without disturbing the construction; and betokens a sudden emotion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or any other passion: as, *O! o! Ecce*, lo! *Heu!* alas!

PART II.

FIRST SYNTAX, OR CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

CHAPTER I.

THE ELEMENTS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

§ 52. EVERY Simple Sentence consists of two parts : viz.—

1. The Subject, or that Person or Thing, about which anything is told.
2. The rest of the Sentence, or the Predication, which tells about the subject.

Thus—

	Subject.	Predication.
(a.)	<i>Cæsar</i>	<i>pugnat,</i>
	Cæsar	fights.
	<i>Hostes</i>	<i>fugiunt,</i>
	The enemies	flee.
(b.)	<i>Equus</i>	<i>currit,</i>
	The horse	runs.
	<i>Canes</i>	<i>latrant,</i>
	Dogs	bark.
	<i>Ovis</i>	<i>bālat,</i>
	The sheep	bleats.
	<i>Aves</i>	<i>cantant,</i>
	Birds	sing.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATION.

§ 53. A Personal Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person : as—

Ego lego,

I read.

Nos vidēmus,

We see.

Tu audis,

Thou hearest.

Vos scribītis,

Ye write.

Puer studet,

The boy studies.

Sorores amant,

The sisters love.

Verbum Personale concordat cum Nominativo Numero et Personâ : ut—

Ego disco :

tu doces :

libri leguntur :

Hasta volat :

tempus fugit :

senectus venit.

Hence an Impersonal Verb and a Verb in the Infinitive Mood have no Nominative Case.

II. SUBJECT.

§ 54. In the preceding instances, the subject of each sentence is a *single* Noun or Pronoun. But subjects often consist of more words than one. Thus a subject may contain several Substantives, or an Adjective agreeing with the Substantive, or even several other words added in construction to these.

1. With respect to a single Noun—

Obs. 1. A noun of multitude in the singular takes a verb plural : as—

Pars abiere (part of the men have gone).

Veniunt leve vulgus euntque.

Where *pars* and *vulgus* are used like *plurals* for several persons,

But— *Tertia acies procucurrit :*

Where *acies* is taken for the whole line of soldiers acting as *one*.

Obs. 2. The Nominative is sometimes understood—

Thus, (1.) The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is seldom expressed, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *distinction* : as—

(a.) Understood—

Arma virumque cano (arms and the man I sing), where there is no doubt that it was Virgil (§ 33, p. 42).

(b.) Expressed—

Ego reges ejeci: *vos* tyrannos introducitis (*I* cast out kings: *ye* bring in tyrants); where there is a strong emphasis upon *ego* and *vos*.

(2.) Also *men* (*homines*) or *they* are often understood before verbs of *saying*, *relating*, and *calling*: as—

Illic, ut *perhibent*, *nox* silet (there, as *they* relate, the night is still).

Obs. 3. An Infinitive is sometimes used for a Substantive: as—

Non est mentiri meum, lying is not mine.

Invidere non cadit in sapientem.

See § 9, p. 6.

2. There are three ways in which more substantives than one are combined in a Subject: viz.—

(1.) Where several substantives refer to the *same* thing, they are put in the *same* case: as—

Troja urbs, the city (of) Troy.

Tarquinius rex, Tarquin the king.

N.B.—Notice the difference of the Latin idiom, in the first of these expressions, from English, *the City of London*, &c.

This is called **APPOSITION** (*appono, appositum*).

Substantiva rei ejusdem, vel in *appositione* collocata, in eodem casu ponuntur: ut—

Cato Censor loquitur.

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.

Dux urbes potentissimæ, *Carthago et Numantia*; where *Carthago* and *Numantia* are each put in apposition with *part* of the plural noun *urbes*.

Hannibal peto pacem; where *Hannibal* is in apposition to *ego* understood.

- (2.) Where several substantives refer to *different* things combined together, they are joined by Conjunctions standing between them : as—

Pater et mater, the father and the mother.

Castor et Pollux, Castor and Pollux.

-que is joined on to the *second* of the two words which it couples : as—

Tempus necessitasque, time and necessity.

Obs. When a verb refers to *several* nominative cases, it follows one of the two following rules:—

- (1.) Either it agrees in number and person with the nominative to which it is nearest : as—

Tempus necessitas-que postulat, time and necessity requires;

- (2.) Or it is put in the plural number, and agrees with the nominative of the most worthy person : as—

Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus, neither I nor you have done these things (*i.e.*, neither you nor I).

Tu et Tullia valētis.

Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnāre visi sunt.

NOTE.—In Latin, the first person is more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

- (3.) Where there are two Substantives, of which one *qualifies* or explains the other, the qualifying one is put in the Genitive Case : as—

Ciceronis filius, Cicero's son. *Amor nummi*, the love of money.

Pompeii fuga, Pompey's flight. *Frumenti acervus*, a heap of corn.

Quum duo substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum *vel* definitivum in genitivo ponitur : ut—

Crescit amor nummi.

Tarquinius, rex Romanorum, abiit.

Obs. 1. A Dative is sometimes used instead of a Genitive: as—

Pater mihi, my father.

Obs. 2. Sometimes an Ablative of the manner, consisting of an Adjective and Substantive, is used instead of a Descriptive Genitive after a Substantive: as—

Puer formâ insigni, a boy of remarkable beauty.

Compare *Ingenui vultûs puer*, a boy of an open countenance.

3. An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as—

Rosa rubra, a red rose.

Bella dira, dreadful wars.

Nubibus obscuris, with dark clouds.

Viri probi, of an upright man.

So also Participles (which are the Adjectives of the Verb), and Adjectival Pronouns: as—

Ferrum nocens, the injurious iron.

Hæc regna, these realms.

And the Participle of a Periphrastic Verb (§ 40, p. 70) agrees with the Nominative case in gender: as—

Carthago delēta est, Carthage was destroyed.

Cæsar occisus est, Cæsar was slain.

Nomina Adjectiva, quæcunque sunt, cum Substantivo genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut—

Solvitur acris hiems: ver geniale redit.

Garrula lingua nocet.

Spes unica populi Romani, Lucius Quinctius, manēbat.

Obs. 1. If there are more than one Adjective (or epithet) agreeing with a Substantive, there should be a conjunction between them: as—

Vir bonus et Sapiens, a good and wise man (*not vir bonus sapiens*).

Obs. 2. When an Adjective refers to several Substantives of different genders, it follows one of these two rules:—

(1.) Either it agrees in number, case, and gender, with the nearest Substantive: as—

Senatus populus-que Romanus, the Roman senate and people.

Semper honos, nomen-que tuum, laudes-que manebunt.

(2.) Or it is put in the plural number, agrees with all in case, and is put in the masculine gender for *living beings*, and in the neuter for *things*: as—

Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, my father and mother are dead.

Virtus et vitium inter se contraria, virtue and vice contrary to one [another].

Obs. 3. An Adjective is sometimes put by itself without a Substantive: as—

Multi convenērunt, many men came together.

So, *Boni*, good men.

Sapientes, wise men.

Docti, learned men.

Verum, that which is true.

Contrarium, the contrary.

Honestum, what is honourable.

N.B. *Man* or *men* are often understood in the masculine, *thing* or *things* in the neuter, and sometimes *woman* or *women* in the feminine.

By this *Ellipsis* an Adjective is, in fact, used for a Substantive.

Obs. 4. An Adjective agreeing with a Substantive often takes a Substantive after it in some oblique case.

Thus (1.) In the Genitive.

(a.) As an *Object* of the Adjective: as—

Timidus deorum, fearful of the gods.

Imperitus rerum, ignorant of business.

Mens futuri præscita, a mind foreknowing the future.

Immēnor beneficii, unmindful of a kindness.

This is an Objective Genitive.

(b.) When the Adjective signifies *part* of a thing: as—

Consūlum alter, one of the consuls.

Animalium alia, some (of) animals.

Delecti militum, chosen (of) soldiers.

Unus Quiritium, one of the Romans.

OBSERVE, from the instances given, that the Adjective governing the Partitive Genitive agrees with it in Gender: as—

Maximus regum = *maximus rex regum*.

Adjectiva sæpe Genitivum *vel* Objecti, *vel* Partitivum post se habent :
ut—

Græcorum oratōrum princeps (i.e., Demosthenes).
Conscia mens recti famæ mendācia ridet.

(See Additional Rules, p. 142.

So also a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun takes a Genitive after it:
 as—

Paulūlum pecuniæ, a very little (of) money.
Dimidium facti. Mēdium noctis.

(2.) In the Dative.

Adjectives expressing a relation to, or property for a person or thing, govern a Dative: as—

(a.) *Proximus huic*, next to this man. *Mihi carus*, dear to me.
Romanis amicus. Patriæ idōneus.

(b.) *Militibus difficile*, difficult for the soldiers.

Adjectiva, quibus aut Relatio ad aliud, aut aliorum aliqua Proprietas significatur, Dativum postulant: ut—

Turba gravis paci, placidæque inimica quieti.
Cuivis facile est discere.

(3.) In the Accusative—

Adjectives sometimes govern an Accusative of the part most concerned, especially in poetry:

as—

Os humeros-que Deo similis, like a god in his face and shoulders.

This is the Accusative of the NEAREST RELATION.

(4.) In the Ablative.

(a.) Adjectives sometimes govern an Ablative of the cause, or the manner or quality of the thing: as—

(a) *Pallidus irâ*, pale from anger.

(b) *Arte rudis*, unskilled in art.

(For the Latin rule, see below, § 55, 7, p. 122.)

N.B. The signs of the *Instrumental Ablative* are *with, in, by means of*; of the *Causal, from, through*; and the *Ablative of the manner* answers the question *how?* (see p. 122.)

(β.) Comparatives govern an Ablative of the thing with which the comparison is made: as—

Tullus Hostilius Romūlo ferocior, more fierce than Romulus.
Hannibal Scipione major.

Unless the Conjunction *quam* is used : as—

Tullus Hostilius *ferocior* fuit *quam* Romulus.

Hannibal *major* fuit *quam* Scipio.

Comparativa, nisi exponantur per *quam*, ablativum exigunt : ut—

Argentum *auro* *vilius*.

(5.) A case with a Preposition : as—

Primus *inter omnes*, first amongst all.

Homo *ad nullam rem* utilis.

Virgo *felix ante alias*.

(6.) Participles govern the case of their verbs—

Æolus sceptrum tenens, Æolus holding his sceptre.

Dido *his commōta* fugam parabat.

Participia, Gerundia, et Supinum in *um*, suorum Verborum casus regunt : ut—

Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas,

Talia voce refert.

NOTE.—Sometimes the *Ablative Absolute* belongs to the subject of a sentence. (See below, § 56, p. 128.)

III. PREDICATION.

§ 55. 1. The most important part of the Predication is the VERB, which indeed is the chief word (*Verbum*) of the whole sentence. So that the Predication will vary according to the particular kind of Verb employed. The Verb may be either,

I. A COPULATIVE VERB, like *Sum*, &c., or

II. A TRANSITIVE VERB, or

III. A NEUTER VERB, or

IV. A PASSIVE VERB, or

V. AN IMPERSONAL VERB.

NOTE 1.—Hence, in construing a sentence, every one should find the Verb first, in order to see which is the Nominative Case ; or, in other words, should look to the Verb, and take the Nominative Case.

NOTE 2.—Most of the Rules of Subjects apply to the Substantives of the Predication. For these may have cases depending on them, Adjectives agreeing with them, or be used in Apposition, or in Conjunction with other words.

Obs. An Adverb is used with a Verb, as an Adjective with a Substantive (§ 49, p. 103): as—

Oratores *bene dicunt*, Orators speak well.

Philosophi *aliquando errant*.

Adverbs are also used to qualify Adjectives: as—

Pene omnes, nearly all.

NOTE.—Hence Adjectives qualify Substantives ; but Adverbs qualify Adjectives and Verbs.

2. There are two ways in which more verbs than one are combined in a simple sentence : viz.—

(1.) Coupled by Conjunctions.

Here the same Moods and similar Tenses are used : as—

Te oro et hortor, I beg and exhort you.

Pecunia impērat aut servit.

Nec legit, nec scribit.

Manlius semper me soluit diligentissimē-que observavit.

Obs. Sometimes the Conjunction is omitted: as, *Veni, vidi, vici*.

(For the rule, see below, 11, p. 124.)

(2.) Without a Conjunction.

The latter of two Verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood :
as—

Te cupio vidēre, I desire to see you.

Nihil amplius possum scribēre.

Ex te audire volo.

Amitti virtus non potest.

Puer angustam pauperiem pati discat.

Duorum verborum posterius in Infinitivo ponitur : ut—

Debes hoc etiam rescribēre.

Obs. The *latter* verb is the *verb* of the sentence ; the former is used as a kind of *auxiliary* to the latter, like the English verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *ought*, &c.

3. The Verb *sum* is used with a Nominative Case after it : as—

Inertia est vitium, idleness is a vice.
Arbor virga fuit, the tree was a shrub.

Sum is called a Copulative Verb, because it couples the case after it, which is called the Predicate, with the Subject before it.

Verba Copulativa cujuscunque generis, eisdem utrinque casus habent : ut—

<i>Deus est summum bonum.</i>	<i>Magna parens terra est.</i>
<i>Amicus verus thesaurus est</i>	<i>Virtus est sua merces.</i>
[<i>magnus.</i>	<i>Fundamentum justitiæ est</i>
<i>Proximus est Euryalus.</i>	[<i>fides.</i>

Obs. 1. If the case after the Verb be an Adjective, it agrees, in number, case, and gender, with the Substantive before it : as—

Ratis est fragilis. Cuneis sunt celeres.

Obs. 2. There are many verbs that are used Copulatively, and especially the following :—

Sum, fio, existo, videor-que, habeor-que, vocor-que,
Et feror ; ast usus cætera verba dabit : ut—

Ex nitido fit rusticus.
Virtus clara æternaque habetur.

Obs. 3. If the case before the Verb is an oblique one, the case after it will be the same, by the rule : as—

Natura beatis
Omnibus esse dedit.

4. Transitive Verbs require an Accusative after them of the *Object* to which their signification passes on (§ 33, p. 43) : as—

Terra parit flores, the earth brings forth flowers.
Ventus agit nubes, the wind drives on the clouds.

Justitia societatem conservat. Arbor ramos tendit.

The Noun in the Accusative is called the NEARER OBJECT of the Verb.

Verba Transitive Accusativum Objecti propioris exigunt : ut—

Percontatorem fugito.

Hostis habet muros.

Retia vitat avis.

Cimon copias suas eduxit.

Avaritia fidem, probitatem, ceterasque artes subvertit.

Cæsar, Romanorum primus Imperator, Pompeium devicit.

Obs. 1. Some Verbs govern two Accusatives, one of the person, and another of the thing: as—

Pacem te poscimus omnes, we all implore peace of you.

Verba rogandi, docendi, monendi, et quædam alia, duplicem regunt accusativum, alterum personæ, alterum vero rei: ut—

Dedocebo te istos mores.

Obs. 2. The object of a few verbs is put in the Genitive or Ablative.

Thus, 1. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor*, Genitivum aut Accusativum admittunt: ut—

Semper hujus diei et loci meminero.

Si rite audita recordor.

2. *Misereor* and *miserescō* always govern a Genitive: as—

Miserere animi non digna ferentis.

3. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, pascor, potior*, Ablativum objecti regunt: ut—

Officiis vitæ bene fungitor.

Utère consiliis.

For *potior* with a genitive, see Second Syntax. § 70, p. 219.

5. Intransitive or Neuter Verbs have no Accusative after them, because their signification is complete in itself: as—

Venti decidunt. Nubes fugiunt. Sol fulget.

Obs. 1. Some verbs, like *fugio*, are used with both a Transitive and a neuter signification.

Obs. 2. Some Neuter Verbs take an Accusative of a cognate signification. See Second Syntax, § 68, p. 206.

6. The Dative is the case of the Receiver, or the Interested or Acquisitive Case, and is used after all Verbs where *gain* (or *loss*) is implied: as—

Ago tibi gratias, I give thanks to thee.

Auxilium tu mihi ferre potes, you can bring aid to me.

Lycurgus agros locupletium plebi dedit.

Vita turpis morti honestæ locum non relinquit.

This is the Dative of the REMOTER OBJECT.

Omnia Verba regunt Dativum ejus rei vel personæ, cui aliquid acquiritur aut adimitur: ut—

1. *Transitives, with an Accusative.*

Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra, boves.

2. *Intransitives or Neuters, without an Accusative.*

Amico non temere irascor.

Principiis obsta.

Crede mihi.

Optimus quisque posteritati serviet.

Obs 1. *Verba dandi et dicendi regunt Dativum: ut—*

Dat tibi terra viam.

Puer mihi verum dixit.

Obs 2. Those verbs especially govern a Dative, which are compounded with a Preposition or Adverb conveying the meaning of *Relation towards*.

Dativum sæpius regunt Verba composita cum his Adverbiis, bene, satis, male; et cum his Præpositionibus, præ, re, ab, ad, eon, sub, super, ante, post, circum, ob, in, inter: ut—

Pulchrum est benefacere reipublicæ.

Redeunt jam gramina campis.

Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero.

Obs 3. *Sum* with a possessive signification governs a Dative of the possessor: as—

Est mihi, I have.

Est nobis, we have.

Est tibi, thou hast.

Est vobis, you have.

Est ei, he has.

Est iis, they have.

Est mihi pater, I have a father.

But with a plural object *sunt* is used: as—

Sunt mihi libri, I have books.

Obs. 4. The compounds of *sum*, except *possum*, govern a Dative: as—

Mihi nec obest, nec prodest.

7. The Ablative generally expresses, after a verb—

1. The *Instrument* or *means*, *with*, or *by means of* which anything is done: as—

Miles manu gladium tenuit, the soldier held the sword with his hand.

2. The *Cause*, *through* or *from* which a thing is done:

as—

Fame interiit, he perished from hunger.

3. The *Manner*, answering to the question *how?* as—

Miltiades summâ æquitate res Chersonesi constituit, Miltiades settled the business of the Chersonesus with the utmost fairness.

Verba, Adjectiva, et aliquando Substantiva Ablativum regunt, significantem *Instrumentum*, aut *Causam*, aut *Modum* rei vel actionis: ut—

Et melius nullâ quæritur arte favor.

Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore.

Mirâ celeritate rem perēgit.

Obs. 1. The *Price* at which anything is bought is put in the Ablative: as—

Spem pretio non emo.

Obs. 2. For the Ablative Absolute, see below, § 56, p. 128.

8. A Case with a Preposition is added, when the Verb will not govern the case required, or where a Relation must be expressed otherwise or more exactly than a case can express it: as—

Hæc mihi in mentem veniebant, these things came into my mind.

Cum his nuncius redit, the messenger returns together with these men.

Germani *trans Rhenum* incōlunt.

Navis mercatoria *ex Epheso in portum* advēnit (out of—into).

Obs. Prepositions compounded with Verbs (§ 48, p. 101) frequently govern the same case as they govern out of composition: as—

Consūles triumphantes *urbem inierunt*, the consuls triumphing
[entered the city.

Naves celerīter *pugnā excesserunt*.

Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extrâ compositionem regebat: ut—

Detrūdunt naves scopūlo.

9. Names of Places.

The names of Places are generally used with Prepositions: as—

Homīnes *a Dianio ad Sinōpem* navigavārunt, the men sailed from Dianium to Sinope.

Coīmus *in Piræo*, we met in the Piræus.

But, (1.) The name of a *town*, *from which* a motion lies, is put in the *Ablative*: as—

Româ profectus est, he set out from Rome.

Athēnis discessit.

(2.) The name of a *town*, *to which* a motion lies, is put in the *Accusative*: as—

Modo venerat *Hennam*, she (Ceres) had just come to Henna.

Capuam rediit.

(3.) The name of a *town*, *where* an action is done, is put in the *Ablative*, if it is of the Third Declension or Plural Number; and in the *Genitive*, if of the First or Second Declension and the Singular number: as—

Alexander *Babylōne* mortuus est, Alexander died at Babylon.
Athēnis litēris operam dedi. *Romæ* vixit.

Locus *a quo* Ablativum,

Locus *quod* Accusativum,

Locus *ubi* Ablativum,

Aut assumit Genitivum: ut—

Dēmarātus Tarquinius Corintho fugit.

Romæ Tibur amem, ventōsus, *Tibure* Romam.

Obs. *Domus* and *Rus* are used like names of towns : as—

Domi, at home; *domum*, to home; *domo*, from home.
Ruri, in the country; *rus*, to the country; *rure*, from the country.

(See *Accidence*, p. 24, *Second Syntax*, § 73, p. 228.)

10. Time.

(1.) The time '*how long*' is put in the Accusative: as—

Dies noctes-que fata nos circumstant, for days and nights mis-
 haps stand round us.

(2.) The time '*when*' is put in the Ablative as—

Tertio anno urbs capta est, the city was taken in the third year.

Duratio temporis Accusativum; *definitio autem Ablativum sibi vindicat*: ut—

Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.

Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.

11. Conjunctiones Copulativæ et Disjunctivæ similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt : ut—

Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum.

Virtus nec eripi, nec surripi potest.

Omne corpus aut aqua, aut. aër, aut ignis, aut terra
[est.

Obs. 1. The Conjunction, which is a link uniting words together, is, of course, placed between the words it unites: as—

Cælum et terra, the heaven and earth.

Cælum immensum et rotunda terra.

Cælum spatiis immensum et rotundus orbis terrarum.

Subiit deserta Creûsa,

Et direpta domus, et parvi casus Iuli.

See also the examples above.

Obs. 2. But the enclitics *que* and *ve* are put at the end of the second of the two words which they couple: as—

Senatus populusque, the Senate and people—(not *senatus que populus*).

When one of them couples batches of words, it must be put at the end of the first word of the second batch: as—

Forma placet, niveus-que color, flavi-que capilli,

Qui-que aderat nullâ factus ab arte decor.

CHAPTER II.

VARIATIONS IN CONSTRUCTION.

§ 56. 1. The Subject of a Passive Verb is usually put in the Ablative case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* : as—

A Romūlo Roma condita est, Rome was founded by Romulus ; *i.e.*, Romulus founded Rome.

Ab ovibus vellera feruntur, fleeces are borne by sheep ; *i.e.*, sheep bear fleeces.

Sometimes in the Dative, especially after the Participle in *dus* : as—

Hoc mihi faciendum est, this must be done by me ; *i.e.*, I must do this.

Passivorum Subjectum in Ablativo ponitur, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* prepositione ; et interdum in Dativo : ut—

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.

Honesta bonis viris, non occulta, quærentur.

Obs. 1. This case is called the *Ablative* or *Dative of the Agent*, and must be distinguished from the Ablative of the Instrument : as—

A Virginio filia sua cultro occisa est.

For, (1.) The *Agent* is the doer of an action, and is either a Person, or regarded as a Person. But the *Instrument* is a means in the hand, or under the control of the Agent.

(2.) The proper sign of the *Instrument* is *with* ; of the *Agent* is *by*.

(3.) The *Instrument* is put in the Ablative without a preposition. The *Agent* is *never* put in the Ablative without the preposition *a* or *ab*.

2. (1.) The Subject of Active Impersonals is put in the Accusative or Dative.

(*a.*) In the Accusative : as—

Me juvat, it delights me ; *i.e.*, I like.

Te juvat, it delights you ; *i.e.*, you like.

&c.

&c.

(b.) In the Dative : as—

Mihi placet, it pleases me ; *i.e.*, I like.

Tibi placet, it pleases you ; *i.e.*, you like.

&c.

&c.

Impersonalia Transitiva Accusativum Subjecti, sed Intransitiva plerumque Dativum postulant : ut—

Me juvat ire per altum.

Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum.

(2.) The Subject of Passive Impersonals is put in the Ablative with the Preposition *a* or *ab* : as—

A primis ordinibus acriter resistebatur, resistance was made actively by the first ranks.

3. The Vocative Case is used when any one is *called* or *spoken to*, and is inserted in a sentence without interfering with the rest of the construction : as—

Huc, *Lenæ*, veni, come hither, Bacchus.

Except that it has a case of *tu* (or *tuus*) corresponding to it : as—

Parce metu, *Cytheræ*, spare thy fear, Venus ; where, as in the last example, *tu*, understood as the Nominative case to the Verb *parce* or *veni*, corresponds to *Cytherea*, or *Lenæ*.

O navis, referent in mare *te* novi
Fluctus.

Obs. O is used before the Vocative case : as—

O lux Dardaniæ, spes O fidissima Teucrûm !

4. (1.) Interrogative sentences always begin with an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle : as—

(a.) *Quis* adest ? Who is present ?

Quem video ? Whom do I see ?

(b.) *Fierine* potest? Can it be done?

Num audes hoc negare? Dare you deny this?
(No.)

Nonne duo aderant? Were not two present?
(Yes.)

(See Accidence, § 49, II. 2, A. p. 106.)

NOTE 1.—An Interrogative Particle is not translated in English, but the Verb or its sign is placed first, as in the preceding examples.

Interrogativæ Sententiæ ab Interrogativo Pronomine vel Particulâ incipiunt: ut—

Quis te mihi casus ademit?

Num fletu ingemuit nostro? *Num* lūmina flexit?

Potest-*ne* rerum major esse dissensio?

NOTE 2. The enclitic *ne* resembles the enclitics *-que* and *-ve*.

Obs: Sentences expressing admiration are similar in construction to Interrogative sentences: as—

Quam cupiunt laudari! How they desire to be praised!

(2.) Double Interrogations consist of two or more clauses, between which a choice is given: as—

Utrum ea vestra, *an* nostra culpa est? Is that your fault or ours?

An Interrogative Particle begins each clause: as—

Utrum defenditis, *an* impugnatis plebem?

Unless the first is omitted: as—

Elōquar *an* sileam? Should I speak out or be silent?

Smyrna *quid* et Colophon? Majora minora-*ne* famâ?

Obs. The Interrogative, as in the last instance, is sometimes moved one place on by the poets.

5. A Substantive and a Participle are often put in the Ablative Case, without reference to the construction of the rest of the sentence: as—

Regibus exactis, consules creati sunt, the kings having been driven out, consuls were created.

This is called the *Ablative Absolute*, and is translated without any signs, the simple meaning of the words being alone given.

Substantivum cum Participio, aliis rectionibus absoluta, in Ablativo casu ubique inveniuntur : ut—

Imperante Augusto, natus est CHRISTUS; *imperante Tiberio*, crucifixus.

Cæsare ventūro, Phosphore, redde diem.

Obs. 1. Sometimes two Substantives, or a Substantive and an Adjective, are used in the same way : as—

Me duce, tutus eris, I being your leader, you will be safe.

Antonius, *Cæsare ignaro*, magister equitum constitutus est.

Obs. 2. The Ablative Absolute is sometimes attached to the subject, in place of an Active Past Participle: as—

Cæsar, victis hostibus, Romam rediit = having conquered his enemies.

Antonius, *repudiâtâ Octaviâ*, Cleopatram duxit uxorem.

Obs. 3. The Ablative Absolute must not be used, if the Substantive refer either to the *Subject* or *Object* of the sentence. In these cases, the Participle will agree with the Substantive, which will either be the nominative to, or governed by, the Verb: as—

Tarquinio exacto, consules creati sunt—

Tarquin having been expelled, consuls were created.

But, *Tarquinius exactus* in Etrūriam fugit—

Tarquin having been expelled fled into Etruria.

And, *Tarquinium exactum* opprobrio persecuti sunt—

They pursued with reproach Tarquin after he was (having been) expelled.

CHAPTER III.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 57. I. Sentences are of two kinds : viz.—

- 1.
- Simple*
- , which have but one clause : as—

Music for the time doth change his nature.

Rome was not built in a day.

- 2.
- Compound*
- , which have several clauses, as—

The man that hath no music in himself,

Nor is not moved with concord of sweet sounds,

Is fit for treasons, stratagems, and spoils.

Rome, which was the greatest city of antiquity, and became the mistress of the civilized world, was not built in a day.

Obs. Each of the clauses in a compound sentence, if fully drawn out, is capable of being a simple sentence.

Thus in the first instance above, there are three clauses moulded into one sentence, which, when the sentence is taken to pieces, are as follows:—

- (1.) The man is fit for treasons, stratagems and spoils.
- (2.) That man hath no music in himself.
- (3.) That man is not moved with concord of sweet sounds.

II. In every Compound Sentence, there is one **LEADING** or **PRINCIPAL CLAUSE**. Thus above the Principal Clauses are—

The man is fit for treasons, stratagems, and spoils.

Rome was not built in a day.

This clause forms, so to speak, the backbone of the sentence, and determines its character.

There are *four* other kinds of clauses, which are mostly known apart by the *links* which connect them with the rest of the sentence and introduce them : viz.—

1. **CONJUNCTIONAL CLAUSES**, introduced by a Conjunction : as—

Conticuere omnes, intenti-*que* ora tenebant, all were still, *and* held intent their faces.

2. **RELATIVE CLAUSES**, which are introduced by a Relative : as—

Belgæ proximi sunt Germanis, *qui* trans Rhenum incolunt, the Belgæ are next to the Germans, who dwell beyond the Rhine.

3. **INDIRECT INTERROGATIONS**, introduced by an Interrogative: as—

Cæsar rogat, *quis* vir sit, Cæsar demands who the man is.

4. **INFINITIVE CLAUSES**, consisting of an Accusative and Infinitive, depending upon another verb : as—

Sentit animus, *se suâ vi moveri*, the mind feels that it moves (is moved) by its own strength.

There are therefore five kinds of Clauses : viz.—

- (1.) Principal Clauses.
- (2.) Conjunctional.
- (3.) Relative.
- (4.) Indirect Interrogations.
- (5.) Infinitive Clauses.

Obs. 1. It should be observed from the preceding instances, that, when several clauses are woven into one sentence, the four inferior clauses are often respectively inserted in *the middle* of the Principal Clause. The beginning and end of a clause thus placed are usually marked by *commas*. In construing, the Principal Clause should be made out before the Inferior Clauses.

Obs. 2. Few Clauses are found complete ; for, to avoid repetition, and for the sake of terseness, words belonging to several clauses in common are placed only in one : as—

Camillus, ut oppidum civibus, *ita* cives oppido reddidit :

i.e., *ut* Camillus oppidum civibus reddidit;

ita Camillus cives oppido reddidit.

III. Sequence of Tenses.

SCHEME OF TENSES.

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.
I. PRESENT.	<i>Present.</i> <i>Scribo, I am writing.</i>	<i>Absolute Perfect.</i> <i>Scripti, I have written.</i>	<i>First Future.</i> <i>Scribam, I shall write.</i>
II. PAST. <i>Scripti, I wrote.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i> <i>Scribebam, I was writing.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i> <i>Scriptiseram, I had written.</i>	<i>Future Imperfect.</i> <i>Scripturus eram, I was about to write.</i>
III. FUTURE.	<i>First Future.</i> <i>Scribam, I shall be writing.</i>	<i>Second Future.</i> <i>Scriptsero, I shall have written.</i>	<i>Future Future.</i> <i>Scripturus ero, I shall be about to write.</i>

2. CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.	
			PRESENT.	PAST.
PRESENT.	<i>Present.</i> <i>Scribam, I may write.</i>	<i>Absolute Perfect.</i> <i>Scriptserim, I may have written.</i>	<i>Present.</i> <i>Scribam, I should write.</i> <i>Future in rus.</i> <i>Scripturus sim, I may be about to write</i>	<i>Perfect.</i> <i>Scriptserim, I should have written.</i>
PAST.	<i>Imperfect.</i> <i>Scriberem, I might write.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i> <i>Scriptissem, I might have written.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i> <i>Scriberem, I should write.</i> <i>Future in rus.</i> <i>Scripturus essem, I might be about to write.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i> <i>Scriptissem, I should have written.</i>

(1.) The tenses of these classes are not intermixed in the

same sentence; so that either Present, Past, or Future Tenses may be used in one sentence, but not Tenses of two kinds.

- (2.) But Present Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood are added to Future Tenses of the Indicative, to supply the want of special Future Tenses Conjunctive.

So that the rules will be as follows :—

1. Temporum Classes Indicativi Modi seorsim adhibentur :
ut—

Per me, quod *erit-que fuit-que*

Est-que, patet.

In Græciâ musici *floruerunt, discebant-que* id omnes.

Non, si te *ruperis*, inquit,

Par *eris*.

2. Præsentibus Temporibus et Futuris Præsentia Modi Subjunctivi Tempora, et Præterita Præteritis subjiciuntur :
ut—

Novit namque omnia vates,

Quæ *sint*, quæ *fuertint*, quæ mox *ventura trahantur*.

Sibi quisque *tendebat*, ut periculo primus *evaderet*.

Quantum *potero*, voce *contendam*, ut populus hoc
Romanus *exaudiat*.

IV. CONJUNCTIONAL CLAUSES.

It has been shown above (§ 55, 2 (1.), p. 118), that Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar Moods.

But, amongst others, the following introduce a Subjunctive :—

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Ut</i> meaning <i>in order that</i> | } finally, to express a <i>purpose</i> . |
| <i>Ne</i> meaning <i>lest, that not</i> | |
| <i>Quo</i> meaning <i>in order that</i> | |
| 2. <i>Ut</i> meaning <i>that</i> | } consecutively, to express a
<i>consequence</i> . |
| <i>Ne</i> meaning <i>that not</i> | |
- As, (1.) Hannibal Hasdrubalem arcessivit, *ut* Romanos *devinceret*, Hannibal sent for Hasdrubal, *in order that* he might conquer the Romans.

Prudentes puniunt, *ne peccetur*, the prudent punish, in order that sin be not committed.

Cæsar castra communit, *quo facilius* hostes prohibere possit.

(2.) Præsidii tantum est, *ut* ne murus quidem cingi possit. Casus quidam, *ne* facerem, impedit.

Ut, ne, quo Finaliter (*in order that, lest*), vel Consecutivè (*that, that not*), adhibita, Subjunctivum Modum exigunt : ut—

Edit, *ut vivat*.

Id egi, *ne interesset*.

Obs. 1. But *ut, 'when' (or 'since')* of time, and '*as*' in comparisons, governs an Indicative : as—

Ut veni coram, non sum permulta locutus, when I came before him, I did not say very much.

Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse, as you yourself are, so you think that all are.

Obs. 2. Other Conjunctions, as *quin, quomòdus, utinam*, &c., always govern a Conjunctive ; and others, as *quum, nisi, antequam*, &c., govern sometimes a Conjunctive, and sometimes an Indicative : as—

Nemo Lilybæi fuit, *quin viderit*, there was no one at Lilybæum, who did not see it.

Cæsar, *quum* Pompeium vicisset, in Asiam trajecit, Cæsar, when he had conquered Pompey (=having conquered Pompey), crossed into Asia.

Præclarè facis, *quum* eorum tenes memoriam, you do excellently, when you retain (i.e., in retaining) a recollection of those things.

V. RELATIVE CLAUSES.

A Relative Pronoun connects its clause with some Substantive in the clause to which it is attached, called its Antecedent.

The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person : as—

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur, the man is wise who says few things.

Adsum, *qui* feci, sc. *ego*.

But in Case it follows the rules of its own clause : as—

Habetis, *quam* petistis, *facultatem*.

Habebis, *cui* des literas, sc. eum.

Relativum cum Antecedente concordat Genere, Numero, et Personâ; Casu autem clausulæ suæ regulis paret : ut—

Contemnimus *hominem*, *qui* amat mendacia.

Ea est jucundissima *amicitia*, *quam* similitudo morum conjugavit.

Obs. 1. Where a Relative refers to more than one Antecedent, it is put in the plural number, and agrees in gender with the most worthy (see § 54, 3, *Obs.* 2, p. 114): as—

Ninus et Semiramis, *qui* Babylōna condidērunt—

Ninus and Semiramis, who built Babylon.

Obs. 2. Sometimes a Relative refers to two Substantives, in which case it agrees in number and gender with the one in its own clause: as—

Thebæ, *quod* Bæotiæ caput est, Thebes, which is the capital (head) of Bæotia.

Homines tuerentur illum *globum*, *quæ* terra dicitur.

Obs. 3. The Pronoun *Is* answers to *Qui*: as—

Naturâ tenacissimi sumus *eorum*, *quæ* pueri percepimus, we are by nature the most retentive of those things, which we have learnt as boys.

Obs. 4. The Antecedent is often understood: as—

Qui, he who.

Qui, those who.

Quæ, she who.

Quæ, the things which.

Quod, that which.

Quorum, of those who.

&c.

&c.

Obs. 5. Sometimes a Relative governs the Subjunctive Mood: as—

Stultus es, *qui* huic credas, you are foolish, because you believe (*i.e.* for believing) this fellow.

Cæsar equitatum præmisit, *qui* viderent.

In the last instance, the antecedent is a noun of multitude (see § 54, 1, *Obs.* 1. p. 111).

Obs. 6. A Relative *never* occurs without a Relative Clause.

VI. INDIRECT INTERROGATIONS.

An Indirect Interrogation is *a question appended as an object to a verb* : as—

1. Direct. *Quæ est?* Who is she?
Indirect. *Rogo, quæ sit,* I ask, who she is.
2. Direct. *Quid fecit Brutus?* What has Brutus done?
Indirect. *Cassius rogavit, quid fecisset Brutus,*
Cassius asked, what Brutus had done.
3. Direct. *Quid tandem Sextius in hâc re facere potest?*
Indirect. *Quæro quid tandem Sextius in hâc re facere possit.*

Obliqua Interrogatio Subjunctivum Modum semper præse gerit : ut—

Novit namque omnia vates,
Quæ sint, quæ fuerint, quæ mox ventura trahantur.

Obs. An Indirect Interrogation is always introduced by an Interrogative.

VII. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

1. Simple Infinitive Clauses are Simple Sentences appended to another Verb.

Thus, 1. *a. Cæsar Pompeium devicit,* Cæsar conquered Pompey.

b. In historiâ narratum est, Cæsarem Pompeium devicisse, it has been related in history, that Cæsar conquered Pompey.

2. *a. Plato Tarentum ad Archydam venit.*

b. Platonem Cicero scribit Tarentum ad Archydam venisse.

Obs. An Infinitive Clause is often mixed up with the Clause on which it depends.

2. Infinitive Clauses follow—

1. Verbs expressing a *feeling* or *disposition of the mind* of any sort: as, *volo, cupio, gaudeo, spero; video, sentio, credo, scio, &c.*
2. Verbs of *declaring*: as, *dico, nuntio, jubeo, veto, promitto, simulo, &c.*

Verba *sentienti* et *declarandi*, Clausulam Infinitivam sæpe regunt: ut—

Sentit animus, se suâ vi, non alienâ moveri.

Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum.

Obs. The Infinitive expresses *facts*, and is used after all Verbs that admit of a *fact* as their object.

It will follow from this Syntax, that there are three Con-
cords or agreements in Latin: viz.—

1. Between the Nominative Case and the Verb.
 2. Between the Adjective and the Substantive.
 3. Between the Antecedent and the Relative.
-

APPENDIX TO FIRST SYNTAX.

RULES FOR CONSTRUING AND PARSING,

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

§ 58. I. CONSTRUING.

A. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. FIND the Verb, which must be in a Proper Mood.

Obs. If no Verb is expressed, *est* or *sunt* is probably understood.

2. Find the Nominative Case, which will be in the same Number and Person as the Verb, and will answer the question *who?* or *what?*

Obs. 1. If there is no Nominative expressed, the Nominative will generally be a *Pronoun* understood agreeing with the Verb.

Obs. 2. If the Verb be an *Impersonal Verb*, its subject will be in some other Case. See Syntax, chap. ii. 2.

3. Find all the Adjuncts of the Subject, if any: viz. —

1. A Noun (a.) in Apposition, or—
(b.) Coupled by a Conjunction, or—
(c.) In the Genitive after it, or—
2. An Adjective (or Participle) agreeing with it, (a.) By itself, or—
(b.) Governing a Case.

4. Find the Adjuncts of the Verb, if any : viz. —

- (1.) Another verb, (a.) Coupled with it by a Conjunction, or—
(b.) In the Infinitive after it, or—
- (2.) An Adverb.

5. Find the cases after the Verb.

To do this, see first what kind of Verb is used :—

- (1.) If a Copulative Verb, look for the same case after it as went before it.
 - (2.) If a Transitive Verb, look for the Accusative of the nearer object.
 - (3.) Then look for other cases, whether Dative, Ablative, or Case with preposition, &c.
6. If there are any other constructions in the sentence, such as the Ablative Absolute, a mark of Interrogation at the end, &c., refer to the Syntax.
7. Having done this, construe the sentence into English, taking first the subject and then the predication in the order given here and in the Syntax, and see if it will make sense. If not, there must be some mistake.

B. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

1. Construe the Principal Clause like a simple sentence.

2. Find out what other clauses are in the sentence.

- (1.) A Conjunctional Clause is known by the *Conjunction* that introduces it.
- (2.) A Relative Clause is known by the *Relative* that introduces it.
- (3.) An Indirect Interrogation is known by the *Interrogative* that introduces it.
- (4.) An Infinitive Clause is known by the *Accusative and Infinitive*.

3. Construe the clause or clauses in question.

(1.) Take the link of each clause first.

- a. If it is a Conjunction, remark what Verbs it particularly joins.
- b. If it is a Relative, see what is its Antecedent.
- c. If it is an Interrogative, see what Verb in the previous clause it depends on, and what Verb it introduces.
- d. In an Infinitive Clause, see what Verb the Accusative and Infinitive depend on.

(2.) Construe the rest of the clause according to the rules of simple sentences.

(3.) See what Mood the Verb is in, and why it is so.

4. Construe the whole sentence, placing the clauses in their proper place.

i.e., the Relative Clause must come after the Antecedent, a Conjunctive Clause in the Subject or Predication, according to circumstances, and the two others after the Principal Clause.

Lastly, all Sentences should be construed with *constant reference to the Grammar*, in order that the principles may be learnt, which belong to *all* Sentences.

II. PARSING.

State what Part of Speech any word is; and then mention, if it is—

1. A Substantive—

Its Case	Number	What it comes from (Nom. Sing.)
Declension	Gender	
The word it agrees with, or is governed by.		

Give the Rule for its Gender, from the Accidence; and the Rule for its agreement or government, from the Syntax. And decline it.

Obs. If there is time, it should be declined with its own adjective, if it has one, or with *bonus* or *malus*. See Accidence under Adjectives.

2. An Adjective—

Its Case	Gender	Number	What it comes from
What declined like			What it agrees with.

Give the Rule, and decline it.

3. (1.) A Verb in a Proper Mood—

Its Person	Number	Tense	Mood	Voice
What it comes from		Kind of Verb		Conjugation
What Nominative it agrees with.				

Give the Rule; and conjugate both the Verb generally and the Tense.

(2.) An Infinitive—

Its Tense	Mood	Voice	What it comes from
Kind of Verb		Conjugation	What governed by.

Give the Rule; and conjugate the Verb.

(3.) Gerund or Supine—

What Gerund or Supine	What it comes from
Kind of Verb	Conjugation How governed.

(4.) Participle—

Its Case	Gender	Number.	What from (Nom. Sing.)
Tense	Voice		Verb it comes from
Kind of Verb	Conjugation		What it agrees with.

Give the Rule; and Decline and Conjugate it.

4. Relative Pronoun—

Its Gender	Number	Person	Antecedent
Case	How governed.		

NOTE.—Substantival Pronouns follow the rules of Substantives, and Adjectival of Adjectives.

5. Adverb—What Verb or Adjective it qualifies.

6. Preposition—What Case it governs.

7. Conjunction—What Words it couples: or what mood it governs.

8. Interjection—Used alone, or what Case it governs.



ADDITIONAL RULES OF SYNTAX,

FOR EARLY REFERENCE.

§ 59. I. ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. Verba rogandi, docendi, monendi, et quædam alia, utrumque regunt Accusativum, alterum personæ, alterum vero rei : ut—

Pacem te poscimus omnes.

Quid nunc *te*, asine, *litteras doceam* ?

II. DATIVE CASE.

2. Verba Intransitiva Dativum Objecti remotioris regunt, et ea præcipuè, quibus indicatur—

Commodum, submissio,

Cura, *vel* benignitas,

Fides-*ve*, *vel* imperium,

Aut quicquid his contrarium;

Cum *videor*, *evenio*,

Propinquo, *nubo*, *supplico*,

Et quæ præstabit lectio. }

Ut—

Videndum est, ut eâ liberalitate utamur, quæ *prosit amicis*,
noceat nemini.

Tu ne *cede malis*, sed contrà audentior ito.

Ignavis *precibus* fortuna *repugnat*.

Consulite vobis, *prospicite patriæ*.

Ego nunquam *mihi* minus, quam hesterno die, *placui*,

Utrumque vitium est, et *omnibus credere* et *nulli*.

Imperat aut *servit* collecta pecunia *cuique*.

Parenti oportet potius quam *amori obsequi*.

Divitior mihi et *affluentior videtur* esse vera *amicitia*.

Obs. But, *delecto*, *ludo*, *juvo*—

guberno, *rego*, *jubeo*—

govern an Accusative: as—

Non *omnes* *arbusta juvant*, *humilesque myricæ*.

2. *Dativum Objecti remotioris regunt Adjectiva multa et Adverbia quibus indicatur*

*Commodum, similitudo,
Congruentia, consuetudo,
Æqualitas, benignitas,
Facilitas, jucunditas,
Propinquitas, affinitas,*

aut his contrarium : ut—

*Si facis, ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris,
Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus æquus.*

Mihi nemo est amiscior, nec jucundior, nec carior Attico.

Turba gravis paci, placidæque inimica quieti.

III. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

(See above, p. 115.)

Substantives and Adjectives governing an Objective Genitive express mostly *desires, feelings, or faculties* of the mind or body: and are especially such—

*Quotcunque vel notitiam,
Cupidinem, potentiam,
Timorem, vel memoriam,*

Aut his docent contrarium : ut—

*Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ.
Est natura nominum novitatis avida.
Potens sui. Memor esto brevis ævi.
Timidus Deorum. Immemor beneficii.*

IV. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION &c.

1. *Verba, Adjectiva, et Participia, quibus origo, aut separatio, aut privatio, aut egestas significatur, Ablativum regunt : ut—*

*Nascetur pulchrâ Trojanus origine Cæsar.
Cæsar Ubios obsidione liberavit.
Ægritudo me somno prinabat.
Non tali auxilio, nec defensoribus istis .
Tempus eget.*

2. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, dives, contentus, plenus, fretus, liber, cum Adjectivis pretium significantibus, Ablativum regunt:*

ut—

*Patre, avo, majoribus suis dignus.
Spe præditus. Lætitiâ plenus.
Dives agris, dives positus in fenore nummis.
Sorte tuâ contentus abi.
Perge hinc, omni liber metu.
Fretus juventâ.*

Neque purpurâ venale neque auro.

V. MOODS.

I. The Moods are employed in two ways :—

1. *Independently*, that is, without depending upon, or being governed by, another Verb : as—

Conticuerē omnes, intentique ora tenebant.

2. *Dependently*, or depending in form and meaning upon some Verb going before: as—

Edit, ut vivat.

Vincere scis, Hannibal : victoriā uti nescis.

(1.) The *INDEPENDENT* Moods are—

1. The Indicative.
3. The Conjunctive used Potentially.
2. The Imperative.
4. The Conjunctive used Optatively.

(2.) The *DEPENDENT* Moods are—

1. The Conjunctive used Subjunctively.
2. The Infinitive.

II. There are also the following distinctions :—

1. The Indicative expresses *positive facts*, whether present, past, or future: as—

Nox abiit ; lucet Phœbus ; mox astra redibunt.

2. The Imperative expresses *positive commands*, or *exhortations*: as—

I, puer.

Huc ades.

Obs. In prohibitions, *ne* is always used with the Imperative instead of *non* (and *neve* for *neque*): as—

Abi, ne jura ; satis credo.

3. The Infinitive also expresses *positive facts* in a dependent manner: as—

Audiet cives acuisse ferrum.

4. But the Conjunctive expresses either *suppositions* or *conceptions of the mind*, or what is taken to be in itself *doubtful* or *uncertain*: as

Cur dubitas, quid de republicā sentias?

Oro, ut me adjuves.

There are therefore three *signs* or *characteristic features* of the Conjunctive Mood: viz. —

1. A Supposition or Conception of the mind.
2. Indefiniteness, or Uncertainty.

These two are features of all the Uses.

3. Dependency upon some other Verb, which is a feature of the Subjunctive Use.

Clausula dependens, res anceps, mentis imago;—
Hæc Coniunctivum signa notare solent.

VI. ADJECTIVES.

The following Adjectives—

Primus, et *extremus*, *medius*, *summus*-que, *supremus*.

Ceterus, et *reliquus*, *postremus*, et *ultimus*; addas

Intimus, *interior*-que, *novissimus*, *infimus*, *imus*,

have frequently a partitive meaning, i.e. express the *first*, *last part*, &c.: as—

Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur.

Hæc Janus summus ab imo

Prodocet.

So, *Cetera turba. Extrêmus annus. Media urbs. Reliquum opus.*

Domus interior. Novissimum agmen, &c.

VII. CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions may be divided into Three Classes—

I. Coniunctive Conjunctions, i.e. those which always govern a Coniunctive Mood: viz.—

<i>Ut</i> , that, in order that	<i>Licet</i>	} although
<i>Ne</i> , lest, that not	<i>Ut</i>	
<i>Quo</i> , in order that.	<i>Dum</i>	} until, in future time
<i>Quominus</i> , that not	<i>Quoad</i>	
<i>Quin</i> , but that	<i>Donec</i>	
<i>Dum</i>	<i>Quousque</i>	} would that
<i>Modo</i>	<i>Utinam</i>	
<i>Dummodo</i>	<i>O si</i>	
<i>Tanquam</i>	<i>Quum</i>	} since, because although when, in past time.
<i>Velut</i>		
<i>Quasi</i>		

II. Uncertain Conjunctions, i.e. those which govern an Indicative or Coniunctive according to circumstances: viz.—

<i>Quum</i> , when, in present or future time.	<i>Si</i> , if	
	<i>Nisi</i> , unless	
<i>Ubi</i>	<i>Etsi</i>	} although
<i>Ut</i>	<i>Etiam</i>	
<i>Quoties</i> , as often as	<i>Tametsi</i>	
<i>Simul ac</i> , as soon as	<i>Quamvis</i> , however; gen. Subj.	
<i>Antequam</i>	<i>Quancumque</i> , although; gen. Indic.	
<i>Priusquam</i>	<i>Siquidem</i> , inasmuch as.	
<i>Postquam</i> , after that.	<i>Cum</i> , as if, as.	

III. Indicative Conjunctions, i. e. those which always govern the Indicative, except for some special reason: viz.—

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Quod</i> , that, because | <i>Ut</i> , from the time that | |
| <i>Quia</i> , because | <i>Dum</i> | } whilst, until, as long
as, in past or present
time. |
| <i>Quoniam</i> , since | <i>Donec</i> | |
| <i>Quando</i> , when, since | <i>Quoad</i> | |
2. Copulative, Disjunctive, Adversative, and Inferential Conjunctions.

VIII. QUUM AND QUI.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quum</i> meaning (1) <i>since</i> or <i>because</i> | } governs a Subjunctive. |
| (2) <i>although</i> | |
| (3) <i>when</i> in past time | |

But *Quum* meaning *when*, of *present* or *future* things, governs an Indicative.*

QUUM causale vel concessivum Subjunctivum regit ; temporale vero, nisi ad præterita referatur, plerumque Indicativum: ut—

- (1) *Quum tot sustineas et tanta negotia solus.*

Teucer, Salamina patremque

Quum fugeret, tamen uda Lyæo

Tempora populæ fertur vinxisse coronâ.

Alexander, *quum interemisset* Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit.

- (2) Facile omnes, *quum valemus*, recta consilia ægrotis damus.

Quum faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse venito.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 2. <i>Qui</i> used (1) <i>finally</i> for <i>ut is</i> | } governs a Subjunctive. |
| (2) <i>consecutively</i> for <i>talis ut</i> &c. | |
| (3) expressing a <i>cause</i> , for <i>quoniam is</i> | |

But *Qui* without these meanings governs an Indicative.

Qui in *Finalibus* vel *Consecutivis* clausulis, aut in *Causalibus* adhibitum, *Subjunctivum* exigit: ut—

Homini natura rationem dedit, *quâ regerentur* animi appetitus.

Habes qui

Assideat, fomenta paret.

Multa-que se incusat, *qui non acceperit* ultro

Dardanum Æneam, generumque *adsciverit* urbi.

* See Elementary Latin Grammar, § 98, pp. 279, 281, 284, 285.

PART III.

PROSODY,

OR

THE STRUCTURE OF VERSES.

§ 60. EVERY Latin Verse has a certain number of feet, and every foot has a certain number of syllables.

Syllables may be either long (—) or short (˘), according to the *time* taken to pronounce them. But some are common (≡); that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

Obs. Every short syllable is said to contain *one time* (*mōrā*), and every long syllable *two times*. So that one long syllable is equal to two short ones.

The length of a Syllable is called its *Quantity*; and the measure of feet and verses is called *Metre*.

There are, therefore, two parts of Prosody; viz. *Quantity* and *Metre*.

CHAPTER I.

ON QUANTITY.

The *Quantity* of a syllable is said to reside in its vowel.

Thus in *mōnē* the *o* is short, and the *e* long.

§ 61. THE FIVE GENERAL RULES.

- I. All diphthongs and contracted vowels are long *by nature*: as, *Cæsar*, *pænæ*, *bōbus* (for *bōvibus*), and *cōgo* (for *cōigo*).

So, *Alūs*, for *alūs*
Explōdo, from *plaudo*
Illido, from *lādo*
Jūnior, for *jūvēnior*.

Mōbilis, for *mōvibilis*
Obēdio, from *aūdio*
Occido, from *cādo*
Pūnio, from *pēna*.

Obs. 1. Hence *aj* or *ej* (for *ai* or *ei*) are always long: as, *Mājor*, *pījor*. See *Accidence*, p. 1.

Obs. 2. But *præ* before a vowel is *short*: as, *præit*, *præustus*.

- II. One vowel before another is short *by nature*: as—
ait, *Dēus*, *nihil*, *pōeta*, *fūit*.

NOTE.—*H* goes for nothing: as—

Procumbit hūmi bos.

Except 1. *A* before *i* in the old genitives of the First Declension is long: as, *aulai*, *pictai*.

2. *E* between two *i*'s in the Fifth Declension is long: as, *faciēi*, *diēi*. Otherwise it is short: as, *fidēi*, *rēi*, *spēi*.

3. The *I* in *fio* is long, unless *er* follows: as *fiunt*, *fiēbam*, *fieri*, *fierem*. Thus—

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabam.

4. *I* in the genitive in *ius* is generally long, but is sometimes shortened by the poets: as, *illius*, *unius*. *Alterius* and *utrius* have *i* always short, and *alius* (see above) always long.

5. The *e* or *i* in the penultima of Greek words generally stands for the diphthong *ei*, and is therefore long: as, *Ænēas*, *elegia*. So *āer*, *Lāertes*, *herōas*, *ēos*, *Īo*, retain their long letters. But *Dīana*, *chorēā*, and some others, have the vowels in question common.

- III. A vowel before two consonants or a double letter is long *by Position*: as, *pōssunt*, *vērtēx*, *gāza*. But a *short* vowel before a mute and liquid is common: as, *pātris*, *tenēbræ*, *dūplex*, *volūcris*.

Obs. 1. A vowel long by nature of course remains long: as, *māter*, *mātris*, *arātrum* (from *arāre*).

Obs. 2. The vowel is long, when the mute and the liquid are not run into one another, but belong to two different syllables, as, *āb-luo*, *āb-ripio*; and when two liquids follow, as *ōmnibus*; or a liquid and a mute, as *vērto*.

Obs. 3. This rule is only applied to *M* and *N* in words derived from Greek: as, *Cŷcnus*, *Tēcnessa*, *Prōcnis*.

Where one word ends with a consonant and the next begins with one, the last syllable of the former word is long: as—

Ille simūl manibūs tendit divellere nodos.

Where the last syllables of *simul*, *manibus*, and *tendit*, which would be short before a vowel, are made long before the consonants at the beginning of the next words.

Obs. A short vowel at the end of a word should not be placed before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, *x*, or *z*, at the beginning of the word following.*

IV. A vowel before one consonant is long or short by Authority, according to its use by the Latin Poets: as, *dīco* (is), *dīco* (as).

V. Derived words retain the quantity of the Primitives from which they are derived: as—

<i>Āmicus</i> , from <i>āmo</i>	<i>Allēgo</i> , from <i>lēgo</i> (as)
<i>Concīdo</i> , from <i>cādo</i>	<i>Alligo</i> , from <i>ligo</i>
<i>Decēdo</i> , from <i>cēdo</i>	<i>Colligo</i> , from <i>lēgo</i> (is)
<i>Edīdi</i> , from <i>dēdi</i>	<i>Consōlor</i> , from <i>sōlor</i>
&c.	&c.

Obs. But there are several exceptions, where the quantity has been changed: as—

* This occurs seldom in the Poets: as—

Ferte citi ferrum, date telā, scandite muros.—Virg. *Æn.* ix. 37.

Ponitū: spes sibi quisque, sed, hæc quam angusta, videtis.—*Æn.* xi. 309.

In the first of these instances the short *a* is made long before *sc* in *scandite*; and in the second the *ē* remains short before *sp* in *spes*. But these should not be imitated.

Dux, dūcis and *dūco*
Fidus, fiducia and *fīdes*, &c.
Lābor, lābo and *lābor*
Lex, lēgis and *lēgo*
Lux, lūcis and *lūcerna*.
 &c.

Nōtus and *nōta*
Pax, pācis and *pāciscor*
Sēdes and *sēdeo*
Sūpor and *sūpio*
Stātio and *stāre*.
 &c.

So also a few compounds: as—

Agnītum } from *nōtum*.
Cognītum }
 &c.

Pronūbus } from *nūbo*.
Innūba }
 &c.

§ 62. THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. MONOSYLLABLES.

Monosyllables are generally long: as, *cūr, dē, pēs, pār, quā, quīn, vēr, sis*.

Except, 1. Monosyllables in *b, d, l*, and *t*: as—

Sūb, sēd, vēr, ūt.

But *sāl* and *sōl* are long.

2.	<i>Ān</i>	<i>Cōr</i>	<i>Fēr</i>	<i>Nēc</i>	<i>Quā</i>	The Enclitics
	<i>Bīs</i>	<i>Ēs</i>	<i>Īn</i>	<i>Pēr</i>	<i>Tēr</i>	<i>Quē, vē, and nē.</i>
	<i>Cīs.</i>	<i>Fēc.</i>	<i>Īs.</i>	<i>Quīs.</i>	<i>Vīr.</i>	

3. *Hīc* is common: but *hōc* is long.

II. POLYSYLLABLES ENDING IN A VOWEL.

A.

Cases in *A* are short: as, *rosā, regnā, lampadā*.

But the following words are long:—

1. Ablatives of the First Declension: as, *musā, bonā*.

2. Vocatives of Greek words in *as*: as—

Āneā, Pallā (from *Āneas, -a; Pallas, -antis*).

3. Imperatives of the First Conjugation: as, *amā, vocā*.

4. Undeclinable words: as, *trigintā, contrā, intereā, frustrā, &c.*

Except *Ejā, itā, quā*.

E.

Words in *E* are *short*: as, *marē, patrē, dulcē, scribē, nempē, propē, monuerē*.

Except the following *long E's* :—

1. Ablatives of the Fifth Declension: as, *diē, rē, fidē, speciē*.
Hence, *hodiē, quotidiē, pridē, postridiē*; *quarē, quaderē*. And also *famē* from *fames*.
2. Imperatives of the Second Conjugation: as, *monē, docē*.
But *cavē* alone is common.
3. Adverbs in *e*, derived from Adjectives in *us* and *er*: as, *doctē, altē, miserē, pulchrē*. Also *ferē*, and *fermē*.
But *benē, malē, infernē*, and *supernē* have the *e* short.
4. Greek words with *e* for η are long: as, *Tempē, Atridē, crambē*.

I.

Words in *I* are *long*: as, *puerī, nubī, bonī, tenerī, misī, regī*.

Except the following :—

1. *Nisī*, and *quasī*.
2. *Mihī, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi*, where the *I* is common.
3. Greek Datives and Vocatives: as, *Palladī, Phyllidī, Daphnī, Alexī*.

O.

Words in *O* are *long*: as, *arundō, bellō, dicō, eundō, extemplō*.

Except—

1. *Sciō, nesciō, putō* and *volō*.
2. *Egō, duō, citō, modō*, with its compounds, and *octō*.
3. The *O* in proper Names, as *Scipio, Naso*, may be shortened; but this should be avoided if possible.
Homō is generally short; and *nemō* generally long.

U.

Words in *U* are always *long*: as, *tū, dictū, diū*.

Y.

Greek Vocatives in *Y* are *short*: as, *Tiphŷ, Cotŷ*.

III. POLYSYLLABLES ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

The following rules relate to words placed before another word beginning with a *vowel*: as—

Cujŷs anhelatis ignibŷs ardēt humus.

Otherwise, the last syllable is of course long by the Third General Rule: as—

Majŷr sŷm, quā̄m cui possit fortuna nocere.

D, L, N, R, T.

Words ending in *D, L, N, R, and T*, are *short*: as, *apŷd, Hannibāl, culmēn, dicitŷr, rexīt.*

Except—

1. Greek words in *N*: as, *Æneān, musicēn, Titān, Xenophōn*: unless in *on* for *ov*: as, *Delōn, Iliōn.*
2. Some Greek words in *er*: as, *aēr, cratēr.*
3. Contractions in *it*: as, *obīt, petīt, or obiit, petivit.*

C.

Words in *C* are *long*: as, *adhŷc, illīc.*

Except *donēc* (and some monosyllables).

S.

As, Es, Os.

Words in *AS, ES, and OS* are long: as, *rosās, amās; nubēs, monēs; dominōs, honōs.*

Except—

1. (1.) Greek nominatives in *as*, making the Genitive in *ādos*: as, *Arcās, Pallās.*
- (2.) Greek plural accusatives of the third declension: as, *heroōs, lampudds.*

2. (1.) Nouns making the penultima of the Genitive short: *as*, *mīlēs* (mīlītis), *divēs* (divītis), *segēs* (segētis).

Except, *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds.

(2.) Compounds of *ēs*: *as*, *adēs*;—and *penēs*.

(3.) Greek words in *es*: *as*, *Troadēs*, *cacoethēs*.

3. (1.) *Compōs*, *impōs*, and *ōs* (ossis).

(2.) Greek words in *os*: *as*, *Delōs*, *epōs*, *Palladōs*.

Is, Us, and Ys.

Words in *IS*, *US*, and *YS* are short: *as*, *lapīs*, *dicīs*; *servūs*, *amamūs*; *Libjys*, *Tethjys*.

Except—

1. (1.) Datives and Ablatives in *is*: *as*, *rosīs*, *bonīs*, *nobīs*. And the old Ablatives *forīs* and *gratīs*.
- (2.) The second persons singular of verbs, where the penultima of the second person plural is long: *as*, *audīs* (audītis), *relīs* (vellītis), *venīs* (venītis), *possīs* (possītis); and *mauīs* (mauītis).
- (3.) The second person singular of the Second Future Indicative, and Perfect Conjunctive, is doubtful: *as*, *dixerīs*, *fecerīs*.
- (4.) Words in *is*, increasing long: *as*, *Salamīs* (-mīnis), *Samnīs* (-nītis). And *Simoīs* (Σιμόεις).
2. (1.) Nouns in *us*, increasing long: *as*, *virtūs*, *tellūs*, *incūs*.
- (2.) Nouns of the Fourth Declension, except the Nominative and Vocative singular: *as*, Gen. Sing. *gradūs*, *manūs*; Nom. Accus. Voc. Plur., *gradūs*, *manūs*.
- (3.) Greek words in *ous*: *as*, Nom. *Panthūs*, *Melampūs*; Gen. *Sapphūs*, *Cliūs*.
- (4.) 'Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesus*.'

The last syllable in all verses is considered common, i. e., it may be taken for long or short in any metre, whatever is its usual quantity.

§ 63. THE QUANTITY OF FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

I. Prepositions in composition have the same quantity as out of composition : as—

inibat, ādhibetur, dēducit, præponit;

Unless they are prevented *by position*; i.e., unless *two consonants, or two vowels, come together* : as—

immittit, āffert, dēhiscit, præacutus.

Thus, 1. *Āb, ād, ōb, in, pēr, sūb* are short before a vowel: as, *ābest, ādest, ōbest, inest, pērit, sūbest.*

2. *Ā, ē, and dē* are long: as, *āverto, dēcedo, ēludo.* But *de* before a vowel is short: as, *dērat.**

3. *Di, se, ve, and pro* are generally long: as, *dīligo, sēcerno, vēcors, and prōfert.* But *pro* before a vowel is short: as, *prōhibet.*

Except, 1. *Dīrimo, dīsertus.*

2. *Prōcella, prōfuri, prōfiscor, prōfiteor, prōfugus, prōfundus,* and some others.

4. *Re* is short: as, *rēquiro, rēfero.*

Except—

<i>Rēligio</i>	<i>Rēlatum</i>	<i>Rēpperit (rēpe-)</i>
<i>Rēliquiæ</i>	<i>Rēmotum</i>	<i>Rēppulit (rēpu-)</i>
<i>Rēcido</i>	<i>Rēduco</i>	<i>Rēttudit (rētu-)</i>
		<i>Rēttudit (rētu-).</i>

See Accidence, p. 100.

5. *Nē* and *nēc* are short in composition: as, *nēfas, nēgotium.*

Except *nēmo (ne, homo),* and before *qu-*: as, *nēquam, nēquicquam, &c.*

II. The first syllable of *Idem* (masc. *is, dem*) is long, and *idem* (neut. *id, dem*—the *d* being dropped) is short.

III. For the quantities of Perfects and Supines of two Syllables, and their exceptions, see Accidence, p. 83.

The *reduplication* of reduplicated Perfects is short: as *dīdici, fēfelli, tōtondi, cēcidi, &c.*

IV. The penultima of the third person plural of the Perfect Indicative Active of a few words is occasionally shortened by the poets: as—

Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses.

Obstupui, steterunt-que comæ, et vox faucibus hæsit.

* *De* and the succeeding vowel sometimes are contracted: as, *dēst, dēerrat, &c.*

CHAPTER II.

ON METRE.

§ 64. THE HEXAMETER AND PENTAMETER, AND
FIGURES OF SCANNING.

THE most common kinds of Verse are Hexameters and Pentameters.

Hexameters and Pentameters are made up of feet of two kinds, called *Dactyls* and *Spondees*.

The Dactyl * consists of one long and two short syllables : as, *scribĕrĕ, cĕrmĭnĕ*.

The Spondee † consists of two long syllables : as, *dicunt, nūbēs*.

I. THE HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter, ‡ also called the *Heroic* verse, consists of six feet ; of which the fifth must be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee : as—

Tītŷrĕ | tū pătŷ | lĕ || rĕcŷ | bĕns sŷb | tĕgmĭnĕ | fĕgĭ.
Ārmă vĭ | rūmqŷ că | nŷ || Trŷ jĕ quĭ | prĭmŷ ăb | ōrĭs.

1. The four first feet may be either dactyls or spondees, according to choice.
2. There should be a break in the line after two feet and a half, called the *Cæsura* § (*cutting*). That is, the Hexameter consists of two parts, the first containing two feet and a half, and the second three feet and a half : as—

(1.) Quĭd fĕcĭ | āt lĕ | tās—

(2.) sĕgĕ | tĕs quŷ | sĭdĕrĕ | tĕrrām.

* δάκτυλος, from the joints of the finger.

‡ ἡ μέτρον.

† σπονδαῖος, i. e. the *truce-measure*.

§ See below, p. 157.

The third foot is therefore made up of portions of two words; and the Cæsura in an Hexameter is always in the middle of a foot.

3. The words should run into one another as much as possible; i.e., there should be as many *minor Cæsuras* as may be: as—

Pāstō | rēs ōvī | ūm || tēnē | rōs dē | pēllitē | fētūs.

4. The last word must be either a *dissyllable*, as, *fāgī, ōrīs, tērrām, fētūs*; or a *trisyllable*, as, *āvēnā, cānāmūs*: as—

Sīlvēs | trem tēnū | ī || Mū | sām mēdī | tārīs āvēnā.

Sicēlī | dēs Mū | sē || paūl | lō mājōrā cā | nāmūs.

5. Two dissyllables may not end a line: as—

Cēlsō | pēctōrē | sēpē || jū | bām quās | sāt *sīmūl* |
[āltām.

Unless a monosyllable precedes: as—

Cum placi | dum ven | tis sta | ret mare | ; nōn ēgō | Dāphnīn.

But this license should be rarely used.

Obs. The following arrangements of lines are also found, but should not be imitated by beginners: viz.—

- (1.) A spondee in the fifth place: as—

Cārā Dē | ūm sūbō | lēs || māg | nūm Jōvīs | incrē | mēntūm.

But very rarely indeed *three* spondees at the end: as—

Sāxā pēr | ēt scōpū | lōs || ēt | dēprēs | sās cōn | vāllēs.

- (2.) The Cæsura in the fourth foot: as—

Indē tō | rō pātēr | Ānē | ās || sic | ōrsūs āb | āltō.

This last, however, is not uncommon.

II. THE PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter * consists of two parts, called *Penthemimers*, † each containing two feet and a half: as—

Rēs ēst | sōllicī | tī || plēnā tī | mōrīs ā | mōr.

Hēc grēmī | ūm, lāx | ōs || dēgrāvāt | illā sī | nūs.

Sūrgē, nēc | ēxīgū | æ || dēspicē | tēctā cā | sē.

* πέντε, *five*.

† πέντε ἡμι-μέγες, *five half-feet*.

1. The First Penthemimer may have either Dactyls or Spondees. The Second only Dactyls.
2. The Cæsura, or break, comes between the two Penthemimers, and must *never* be bridged over.
3. The Pentameter must always end with a word of two syllables: as, *rōsās, mōnēnt*.

But sometimes *es* or *est* comes after the dissyllable, as *mēm̄ est*, the preceding vowel being cut off.

Obs. Words of three, four, and five syllables are occasionally found at the end of Pentameters, but are not to be imitated in ordinary verse: as, *pētibūs* (very bad), *pōstērtiūs* (better), *sūpērcilīis* (best).

4. The last word should be a Substantive or Verb, or some case of the possessives *meus, tuus, suus*.

III. FIGURES OF SCANNING.

1. ELISION.

- (1.) A vowel at the end of a word before another vowel at the beginning of the next word is cut off: as—

Dāphnīs ē | go in sīl | vīs, || hīnc | ūsque ad | sīdērā |
[nōtūs.

This is called *Synalæpha* (σύν, ἀλείφω).

Obs. 1. Occasionally, though rarely, the vowel is not elided: as—

Tēr sūnt | cōnā | tī im | pōnērē | Pēlō | Ōssām.

This is called *Hiatus* (hiō).

Obs. 2. *Heu, O, ah, io*, and some other Interjections are never cut off.

- (2.) *M* with its vowel at the end of a word coming before a vowel is also elided: as—

Mōnstrum hor | rēndum in | fōrme, || in | gēns, cui |
[lūmēn ā | dēmtūm.

This is called *Ecthlipsis* (ἐκ, θλίβω).

2. CÆSURA.

All Latin lines are divided into two parts, and the division is properly called *Cæsura*.

In the Hexameter, the *Cæsura* always occurs in the middle of a foot, and the syllable preceding the *Cæsura* is then called the *Cæsural Syllable*.

In the Pentameter, it takes place at the completion of a foot, or after an isolated long syllable.

Obs. In the Hexameter, besides the *Cæsuras* in the third and fourth feet, there is a third in common use, called the *Trochaic*, after the second Trochee (—): as—

Infān | dūm rē | gīnā, jū | bēs rēnō | vārē dō | lōrēm.

3. POETICAL LICENSES.

(1.) *Synæresis* is the contraction or absorption of two syllables into one: as—

Seū lēn | tō fūē | rīnt || āl | vēarīā | vīmīnē | tēxtā.—

So, (ēa) aureā,	(īa) semīanimes,	(iū) Antīum, semīustum.
antēhac,	vīndemiātor,	(ōa) quōad
(ēē) dēest	(īē) ābiēte	(ūa) gēnūa
dēerrat	pāriēte	(ūī), fortūitus, tēnūia,
(ēī) aurēis	(īī) connubīs	&c.
dēinde	tēnīs	
(ēō) aurēō	(īō) connubīō	
alvēō	Semīhominis,	

In some of these instances, the half-vowels *i* and *u*, being in fact interchanged with the half-consonants *j* (*y*) and *v*, make the *preceding* short syllable long.

Other contractions also occur: as, *aspris*, *vinclum*, *periclum*, &c., for *asperis*, *vinculum*, *periculum*, &c. See also *Accidence*, pp. 9, 69, 70.

(2.) *Dieresis* is the resolution of one syllable into two: as—

Dēbūē | rānt fū | sōs || ēvōlū | issē sū | ōs.

For ēvōlvissē. So sūlūē for sīlvā, &c.

- (3.) *Ictus* or *Arsis* is the raising of the voice at the beginning of a foot, and *Thesis* is the lowering it towards the close.

Cæsural Syllables are sometimes lengthened by *Ictus*: as

Pēctōrī | būs īnhī | āns || spī | rāntiā | cōnsūlīt | ēxtā.

IV. HEROIC AND ELEGIAC VERSE.

1. *Heroic* verse is so called from the use of Hexameters alone in Epic or Heroic poems, like the *Iliad* and *Æneid*.

The sense does not terminate with the lines as in *Elegiac* verse; but is made to pause in different places in the lines, in order to produce as much and as pleasant a variation as possible.

Thus—

Nox erat, | et placidum carpebant fessa soporem
Corpora per terras, | silvæque et sæva quiêrant
Æquora: | quum medio volvuntur sidera lapsu; |
Quum tacet omnis ager. | Pecudes, pictæque volucres, |
Quæque lacus late liquidos, | quæque aspera dumis
Rura tenent, | somno positæ sub nocte silenti, |
Lenibant curas, | et corda oblita laborum.—Virg. *Æn.*
[iv. 522–8.]

See also Virg. *Æn.* v. 139 243.

2. *Elegiac* verse* is composed of alternate Hexameters and Pentameters.

The sense should close with the end of the couplet; and the second line should generally run parallel in meaning with the first. The sentences and clauses, therefore, should be short and simple in construction.

Obs. 1. The following cautions should be observed in both kinds of verse by beginners.

- (1.) A monosyllable should never precede the Cæsura, unless it has another monosyllable or a pyrrhic (~~) before it; and even then it is not good.

* From *lūget*, lamentation.

- (2.) When the sense is carried on from an Hexameter, and concluded in the first word of the next line, this word should be a dactyl, or some longer word; or it may be a trochee (—). A Spondee should very rarely be used, and then should be a verb.
- (3.) The last word of a Pentameter should not end, if possible, with a short *ā* or *ē* : as, *pedē, rosā*.
- (4.) A double *a* or *e* should not occur often in the last Penthemimer: as, *Dorica castra, unguis notate, &c.*
- (5.) The first foot in Elegiacs should generally be a Dactyl. If it is not, the second should be so, with rare exceptions. More license is *allowed* in Heroic verse.
- (6.) Elisions should be rare; long vowels and syllables in *m* should be seldom cut off at all, and hardly ever before a short vowel, especially in Elegiacs. Monosyllables should not be elided.
- (7.) Generally speaking, lines like the following should be invariably avoided:—

- a. *Urbem fortem nuper cepit fortior hostis.*
Celso pectore sæpe jubam quassat simul altam.
At contrā si mollia sint primordia rerum.
Nec Saturnius hæc oculis pater aspicit æquis.
Et me Phœbus amat; Phœbo sua semper apud me
Munera sunt, lauri, et suave rubens hyacinthus.
Parietibus textum cæcis iter, ancipitemque.
Quisquis luxuriā tristive superstitione.
- b. *Cessarent, tristique imbre madere genas.*
Sed sic inter nos ut latuisse velint.
Sera tamen tacitis pœna venit pedibus.
Arcessitus erit somnus in ossa mea.
Quis scit an hæc sævas tigridas insula habet.

The following is the *Leonine rhyme*:—

Protinus illa meos auguror esse Deos.

TRANSLATIONS

OF THE

LATIN RULES AND EXAMPLES.

I. MEMORIAL LINES IN ACCIDENCE CONSTRUED.

p. 7, § 9. — *Mares males, ut as viri men, divi (and) gods, plerique montes most mountains, rivi rivers, menses months, venti winds, cum populis with nations, sunt are masculini generis of the masculine gender.*

Contrà on the other hand, divæ goddesses feminæ women, plantæ plants, urbes cities, insulæ islands, cum vocabulis together with the names terrarum of countries, sunt are feminini generis of the feminine gender.

Verbum a verb in infinitivo in the infinitive positum put pro substantivo for a substantive, et and vox indeclinabilis an indeclinable word sunt are neutrius generis of the neuter gender.

Sunt they are generis communis of the common gender quot as many as eruiunt serve utrique generi to either gender pro sexu suo according to heir sex (i.e. the sex signified); ut as bos tua your cow cum bove tuo with your ox: sic so parens, &c. At but sunt there are incerti generis of the doubtful gender et both dama, &c.

p. 11, § 13. — *Hi these sequuntur follow puerum puer cum adjectivis with the adjectives, &c., et and quæ those which fero geroque fero and gero dant give composita compounded (i.e., the compounds of fero and gero) sic conjungant thus decline se themselves.*

p. 12. — *Us et er (words ending in) us and er sunt are masculina masculine: pauca vero but a few in us in us sunt are feminina feminine: ut as alvus, &c., et and quot as many as parent obey regulis the rules legis generalis of the general law. Um (words ending in) um sunt are neutra neuter, et and hæc these in us in us:—virus, &c.—sed but vulgus quoque also (is) masculus masculine.*

p. 14, § 14. — *Hæc these (nouns) sequuntur follow tussim tussis in Accusativo in the Accusative, et and Ablativo in the Ablative. Et and fluvii the rivers, quos which is claudit closes (i. e. which end in is), ut as Liris, &c. Et and videas you may see burim, ut as tussim, &c. At but*

adsciscunt *there take em vel or im, et and e vel or i more mobili in a changeable manner sementis, &c.*

p. 18.—Parisyllaba *parisyllabic nouns* (p. 8), ut nubes *as nubes, plerumque capiunt generally take ium plurali genitivo in the genitive plural; et and imparisyllaba imparisyllabic (nouns) habent have um. Sed but dant (the following) give um, senex, &c., et and fere generally apis, &c. Contra on the other hand, quot as many as dant give i ablativo in the ablative, assumunt take ium genitivo in the genitive; et and quæ those which x vel or s finit ends post consonantem after a consonant; ut as cliens a client, arx a citadel; quod which quæ those (nouns) which gaudent delight unâ tantum syllabâ only in one syllable (i.e. monosyllables) plerumque laudant generally commend (and therefore follow). Sed but quædam certain sunt are excipienda to be excepted, committenda-que and to be committed memoriæ to memory; dant (the following) give um, dux, &c., et both um et and ium stant stand a fraude from frauds.*

p. 20.—Quæ *those which non aucta (when) not increased (i.e., in the nominative) proferunt put forth unam tantam syllabam only one syllable (i.e., monosyllables) sæpius constituunt generally determine sequi to follow partes femininas the feminine party. Sunt tamen there are however quæ those which misceant mingle se themselves catervis with the bands hostium of the enemies (i.e. the masculines) et quæ and those which contra on the other hand expleant fulfil munera the offices neutralium of neither side (i.e., neuters). Nam for augent (the following) increase masculinas copias the masculine forces, vas, &c. plurali renes in the plural. Sed but jungunt (the following) join sese themselves neutris to the neuters, mel, &c. Sunt (those) are neutrius generis of the neuter gender, quæ which parent obey (follow) his these flexione in their declension:—quæ those which e, en, ur, et and us, necnon et and moreover put et and ar, et and al claudunt close (terminate). Sed but quot as many as in us ending in us non sic flectuntur are not so declined amant love partes femininas the feminine party: et and lepus, &c., petunt seek masculinas the masculine. Quæ those which non crescunt do not increase genitivo in the genitive, gaudent delight genere feminino in the feminine gender. Sed but quædam nomina certain nouns in is (ending) in is sunt are masculini generis of the masculine gender: sic so callis, &c. Nomina crescentia nouns increasing, quæ to which penultima the last syllable but one brevis (is) short, sunt are masculina masculine genere in gender. Sed but jungimus we join femininis to the feminines do (words ending in) do et go and (words ending in) go, et and carex, &c. Nomina crescentia nouns increasing, quæ to which penultima the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive reperitur is found longa long, sunt are generis feminini of the feminine gender. Sed but er (words ending in) er, &c., et and or vel or os, et and ens, ut as crater &c. et and o, ut as sermo addunt add se themselves masculinis to the masculines, non femininis not to the feminines.*

p. 22, § 15.—*Sperne reject me (the vocative in) me, mu (the ablative singular in) mu, mi (the nominative plural in) mi, mis (the dative and ablative plural in) mis, si if vis you wish declinare to decline domus.*

p. 22, bottom.—*Quercus (will give) quercubus, ficus dabunt will give ficubus, Dativo plurali in the dative plural: sic so specus, &c., et and portus fere will generally (give) portubus.*

p. 23.—*Semper conjungimus we always join us masculinis to the masculines, u neutris to the neuters: sed but femininis to the feminines (we join) porticus, &c., et sæpe and often penus, &c.*

p. 42, § 31.—*Hæc these dant give ius Genitivo in the genitive, et and sicut just as unus, i Dativo in the dative; solus, &c.*

p. 69, § 40.—*Quindecim fifteen (of the third conjugation), ut as capio, &c. His to these adjungas you may join potior et and orior ultimæ of the last (conjugation).*

p. 98, § 47.—*Exigunt (the following) require Accusativum an accusative, ante, &c., queis to which junxeris you may join ob et and præter, &c.*

p. 99.—*Hæc these (prepositions) regunt govern Ablativum an ablative, a, &c., et and junxeris you may join coram, clam, &c., his to these.*

II. RULES AND EXAMPLES IN FIRST SYNTAX CONSTRUED.

CHAPTER I.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATION.

p. 111, § 52.—*Verbum Personale a personal verb concordat agrees cum Nominativo with (its) nominative numero in number et and personâ in person: ut as—*

Ego I disco learn: tu thou doces teachest: libri books leguntur are read.

Hasta the dart volat flies; tempus time fugit flees; senectus old age venit comes.

II. SUBJECT.

§ 53.—*Obs. 1. Leve vulgus the fickle mob veniunt come eunt-que and go.*

Tertia acies the third line procucurrit ran forwards.

p. 112.—*Obs. 3.* Invidere *envying* non cadit *does not fall* (= *does not belong*) in sapientem *to a wise man*.

2. (1.) Substantiva *substantives* rei ejusdem *of (relating to) the same thing*, vel or collocata *placed together* in appositione *in apposition*, ponuntur *are put* in eodem casu *in the same case*: ut *as*—

Opes *riches*, irritamenta *the incitements* malorum *of (= to) ills* effodiuntur *are dug out*.

Duæ urbes potentissimæ *two most powerful cities*, Carthago *Carthage* et and Numantia *Numantia*.

Hannibal (*I*) Hannibal peto *seek* pacem *peace*.

p. 113.—(2.) *Obs.* Tu et Tullia *you and Tullia* valetis *are well*.

Castor et Pollux *Castor and Pollux* visi sunt *seemed* pugnare *to fight* ex equis *from horses (on horseback)*.

(3.) Quum *when* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversarum rerum *of (relating to) different things* concurrunt *meet together*, alterum *one* vel or definitivum *the defining (or qualifying) one* ponitur *is put* in Genitivo *in the genitive*: ut *as*—

Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases*.

Tarquinius *Tarquin*, rex *the king* Romanorum *of the Romans* abiit *went off*.

p. 114.—3. Nomina Adjectiva *nouns Adjective*, qualiacunque *of whatever kind* (i.e., mere *Adjectives, Participles, or Adjectival Pronouns*) sunt *they are*, concordant *agree* cum Substantivo *with (their) substantive* genere *in gender*, numero *in number*, et and casu *in case*: ut *as*—

Acris hiems *keen winter* solvitur *is abated*; ver *geniale* *genial* spring redit *returns*.

Garrula lingua *a prattling tongue* nocet *hurts* (*does harm*).

L. Quinctius *Lucius Quinctius*, spes unica *the sole hope* populi Romani *of the Roman people* manebat *remained*.

Obs. 2. Honos (*your*) *honour*, nomen-que tuum *and your name*, laudes-que *and (your) praises* semper manebunt *will always last*.

p. 115.—*Obs. 4.* (1.) Adjectiva *adjectives* sæpe habent *often have* post se *after them* Genitivum *a genitive* vel either Objecti *of the Object* vel or Partitivum *a partitive (one)*: ut *as*—

p. 116.—Princeps *the chief* Græcorum oratorum *of Greek orators*.

Mens *a mind* conscia *conscious* recti *of right (rectitude)* ridet *laughs* at mendacia *the falsehoods* famæ *of fame*.

Dimidium facti *half (of) the deed*. Medium noctis *the middle of the night*.

(2.) Amicus *friendly* Romanis *to the Romans*. Idoneus *serviceable* patriæ *to his country*.

Adjectiva *adjectives*, quibus *with which* aut either Relatio *relation* ad aliud *to another thing*, aut or aliqua proprietas *some property* aliorum *of other things* significatur *is signified*, postulant *require* Dativum *a Dative*: ut *as*—

Turba a crowd gravis troublesome paci to peace, inimica-que and unfriendly placidæ quieti to calm rest.

Discere learning est is facile easy cuivis for any one.

(4.) *Hannibal Hannibal major greater Scipione than Scipio.*

p. 117.—*Tullus Hostilius Tullus Hostilius fuit was ferocior more fierce quam than Romulus Romulus.*

Hannibal Hannibal fuit was major greater quam than Scipio Scipio.

Comparativa comparatives, nisi unless exponantur they are explained per quam by quam, exigunt require ablativum an ablative : ut as—

Argentum silver vilius more worthless (of less value) auro than gold.

(5.) *Homo a man utilis useful ad nullam rem for no thing.*

Virgo a virgin felix happy ante alias before others.

(6.) *Dido Dido, commota moved his with these things, parabat was preparing fugam flight.*

Participia participles, Gerundia gerunds, et and Sapina in um supines in um regunt govern casus the cases suorum verborum of their own verbs : ut as—

Tendens stretching duplices palmas both his hands ad sidera to the stars, refert he utters voce with his voice talia such things as these.

III. PREDICATION.

p. 118.—§ 55. *Obs. Philosophi philosophers aliquando errant sometimes err.*

2. (1.) *Pecunia money imperat commands aut or servit serves.*

Nec legit he neither reads nec scribit nor writes.

Manlius Manlius semper coluit always courted me me, diligentissime-que observavit and attended to (me) most assiduously.

Obs. Veni I came, vidi I saw, vici I conquered.

(2.) *Possum scribere I can write nihil amplius nothing more.*

Volo I wish audire to hear ex te from you.

Virtus virtue non potest cannot amitti be lost.

Puer let the boy discat learn pati to suffer angustam pauperiem narrow poverty.

Posteriorius the latter duorum verborum of two verbs ponitur is put in Infinitivo in the infinitive (mood) : ut as—

Debes rescribere you ought to write back hoc etiam this too.

p. 119.—3. *Verba Copulativa copulative verbs cujuscunque generis of whatever kind habent have eisdem casus the same cases utrinque on both sides: ut as—*

Deus God est is summum bonum the chief good.

Amicus verus a true friend est is thesaurus magnus a great treasure.

Euryalus *Euryalus* est is proximus *next*.

Terra *the earth* est is magna parens *a great parent*.

Virtus *virtue* est is sua merces *its own reward*.

Fides (*good*) *faith* est is fundamentum *the foundation* justitiæ of justice.

Obs. 1. Ratis *the bark* est is fragilis *frail*.

Canes *dogs* sunt are celeres *swift*.

Obs. 2. —ast but usus *experience* dabit *will give* (supply) cetera verba *the other verbs*: ut as—

Ex nitido *from a courtier* (i.e., *polite, shining*) fit *he becomes* rusticus *a countryman*.

Virtus *virtue* habetur is reckoned clara *bright* æterna-que *and eternal*.

Obs. 3. Natura *nature* dedit *has given* omnibus to all esse to be beatis *blessed*.

4. Justitia *justice* conservat *keeps together* societatem *society*.

Arbor *the tree* tendit *stretches* ramos (*its*) *boughs*.

p. 120.—Verba Transitive *transitive verbs* exigunt *require* Accusativum *an accusative* Objecti *propioris* of the nearer object: ut as—

Fugito *shun* percontatorem *an inquisitive* (*curious*) *man*.

Avis *the bird* vitat *avoids* retia *the nets*.

Hostis *the enemy* habet *holds* muros *the walls*.

Cimon *Cimon* eduxit *led forth* copias suas *his* (*own*) *forces*.

Avaritia *avarice* subvertit *overturns* fidem *faith*, probitatem *uprightness*, ceteras-que *artes and the other arts*.

Cæsar *Cæsar*, primus Imperator *the first Emperor* Romanorum of the Romans, devicit *conquered* Pompeium *Pompey*.

Obs. 1. Verba *verbs* rogandi of asking, docendi of teaching, monendi of advising, et *and* quædam alia *certain others* regunt *govern* duplicem Accusativum *a double accusative*, alterum *the one personæ of the person*, alterum vero *but the other rei of the thing*: ut as—

Dedocebo *I will unteach* te *you* istos mores *those habits* of yours.

Obs. 2. (1.) Reminiscor (*I remember*), obliviscor (*I forget*), memini (*I bear in mind*), recordor (*I recollect*) admittunt *admit* Genitivum *a genitive* aut or Accusativum *an accusative*: ut as—

Semper meminero *I shall always bear in mind* hujus diei *this day* et *and* loci *place*.

Si *if* rite recordor *I duly recollect* audita *things heard* (*by me*).

(2.) Miserere *pity* animi *a mind* ferentis *bearing* non digna *things* not deserved.

(3.) Fungor (*I discharge*), fruor (*I enjoy*), utor (*I use*), vescor (*I eat*), pascor (*I feed upon*), potior (*I take possession of*) regunt *govern* Ablativum *an ablative*: ut as—

Bene fungitor *discharge well* officiis vitæ *the duties of life*.

Utere *use* consiliis *advice*.

5. *Venti the winds decidunt fall. Nubes the clouds fugiunt flee. Sol the sun fulget shines.*

p. 121.—6. *Lycurgus Lycurgus dedit gave agros locupletium the rich men's fields plebi to the populace.*

Vita turpis a base life non relinquit leaves not locum a place morti honestæ to an honourable death.

Omnia verba all verbs regunt govern Dativum a dative ejus rei of that thing vel or personæ person, cui by which aliquid something acquiritur is acquired aut or adimitur lost (taken away): ut as—

(1.) *Sic so vos ye, boves O oxen, fertis bear aratra ploughs non vobis not for yourselves.*

(2.) *Non temere irascor I am not angry heedlessly amico against (with) a friend.*

Obsta stand against (resist) principiis beginnings.

Crede believe mihi me.

Optimus quisque every best (really good) man serviet will serve (labour for) posteritati posterity.

Obs. 1. Verba verbs dandi of giving et and dicandi of telling regunt govern Dativum the dative: ut as—

Terra the earth dat gives viam a way tibi to you.

Puer the boy dixit told verum the truth mihi to me.

Obs. 2. Verba verbs composita compounded cum his adverbis with these adverbs, bene well, satis enough, male ill, sæpius regunt generally govern Dativum a dative; et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, præ, &c.: ut as—

Benefacere doing good reipublicæ to the state est is pulchrum noble.

Gramina the herbage jam redeunt now returns campis to the plains.

Antefero I prefer iniquissimam pacem a most unfair peace justissimo bello to the justest war.

p. 122.—*Obs. 4. Nec obest it neither does harm, nec prodest nor (does) good mihi to me.*

7. *Verba verbs Adjectiva adjectives et and aliquando Substantiva sometimes substantives regunt govern Ablativum an ablative significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument (or means), aut or causam the cause, aut or modum the manner, rei of the thing vel or actionis of the action: ut as—*

Et and favor favour melius quæritur is better sought nullâ arte with no artfulness.

Boni the good oderunt hate peccare to sin amore from the love virtutis of virtue.

Peregīt he accomplished rem the business mirâ celeritate with wonderful dispatch.

Obs. 1. Non emo I do not buy spem hope pretio for a price.

p. 123.—8. *Germani the Germans incolunt dwell trans Rhenum beyond the Rhine.*

Navis mercatoria the merchant vessel advenit came ex Epheso out of Ephesus in portum into port.

Obs. Naves the ships celeriter excesserunt retired quickly pugnâ from the fight.

Præpositio a preposition in compositions in composition nonnunquam regit sometimes governs eundem casum the same case quem that regebat it used to govern et also extra compositionem out of composition: ut as—

Detrudunt they thrust off naves the ships scopulo from the rock.

9. (1.) *Discessit he went off Athenis from Athens.*

(2.) *Rediit he returned Capuam to Capua.*

(3.) *Dedi I bestowed operam pains literis on literature Athenis at Athens.*

Vixit he lived Romæ at Rome.

Locus a quo the place from which assumit takes Ablativum the ablative, locus quo the place whither (takes) Accusativum the accusative, locus ubi the place where (takes) Ablativum the ablative aut or Genitivum the genitive: ut as—

Demaratus Demaratus fugit fled Corintho from Corinth Tarquinius to Tarquinius.

Romæ at Rome amem I should love Tibur Tibur ventosus changeable as the wind, Tibure at Tibur (I should love) Romam Rome.

p. 124.—10. *Duratio temporis duration of time vindicat claims sibi for itself Accusativum an accusative; definitio autem but the definition (of time) Ablativum an ablative: ut as—*

Pericles Pericles præfuit was over Athenis Athens quadraginta annos for forty years.

Hieme in the winter omnia bella all wars conquiescunt repose.

11. *Conjunctiones Copulativæ copulative conjunctions et and Disjunctivæ disjunctive (ones) conjungunt join together similes casus like cases, modos moods, et and tempora tenses: ut as—*

Miratur he admires portas the gates, strepitum-que and the hum (of men), et and strata the pavements viarum of the streets.

Virtus virtus nec neither potest eripi can be torn away, nec nor surripi be stolen away.

Omne corpus every body est is aut either aqua water, aut aer or air, aut ignis or fire, aut terra or earth.

Obs. 1. Cælum the heaven immensum immeasurable spatiis in spaces (extent), et and rotundus orbis the round globe terrarum of the lands (earth).

Deserta Creüsa the deserted Creüsa subiit entered (my mind), et and direpta domus my pillaged home, et and casus the lot parvi Iuli of little Iulus.

Obs. 2. Forma her beauty placet pleases (him), niveus-que color and

her snow-white complexion, flavi-que capilli, and her golden hair. quique decor and the grace which aderat was present (belonged to her) factus made nullâ ab arte by no art.

CHAPTER II.

p. 125.—§ 56. 1. Passivorum Subjectum *the subject of passive (verbs)* ponitur *is put* in Ablativo *in the ablative*, sed *but* a vel ab præpositione *the preposition* a or ab antecedente *going before*: ut *as*—

Laudatur *he is praised* ab his *by these*, culpatur *he is blamed* ab illis *by those* (i.e., *these praise him, those blame him*).

Honesta *honourable things*, non occulta *not secret things*, quærantur *are sought* bonis viris *by good men* (i.e., *good men seek, &c.*).

Obs. 1. Filia sua *his own daughter* occisa est *was slain* cultro *with a knife* (instr.) a Virginio *by Virginius* (agent).

p. 126.—2. (1.) Impersonalia Transitiva *transitive Impersonals* postulant *require* Accusativum *an accusative* Subjecti *of the subject*; Intransitiva vero *but intransitives* plerumque *generally* (require) Dativum *a Dative*: ut *as*—

Me juvat *it delights me* ire *to go* per altum *over the deep*.

Licet *it is allowable* nemini *for no one* ducere *to lead* exercitum *an army* contra patriam *against his country*.

3. O navis *O ship*, novi fluctus *fresh waves* (tides) referent te *will bear thee back* in mare *to sea*.

Obs. O lux *O light* Dardanis *of Troy*, O spes fidissima *O surest hope* Teucrum *of the Trojans*.

p. 127.—4. (1.) Interrogativæ Sententiæ *interrogative sentences* incipiunt *begin* ab Interrogativo Pronomine *by an interrogative pronoun* vel or Particulâ *particle*; ut *as*—

Quis casus *what chance* ademit te *has taken you away* mihi *from me*?

Num ingemuit *did he groan* fletu nostro *at my weeping*? Num flexit *did he turn* (move) lumina (his) eyes?

Potest-ne esse *can there be* major dissensio *a greater disagreement* rerum *of things*?

Utrum *whether* defenditis *do you defend*, an *or* impugnatis *assail*, plebem *the people*?

(2.) Quid *what* (are) Smyrna *Smyrna* et *and* Colophon *Colophon*? Majora *(are they) greater* minora-ne *or less* famâ *than* (their) fame?

p. 128.—5. Substantivum cum Participio *a substantive with a participle* absoluta *freed from* (independent of) aliis rectionibus *other governments*,

ubique inveniuntur *are everywhere found* in Ablativo casu *in the ablative case* : ut *as*—

Imperante Augusto *Augustus reigning (in the reign of Augustus)*

CHRISTUS *CHRIST* natus est *was born* ; imperante Tiberio *Tiberius reigning (in the reign, &c.)* crucifixus *He was crucified.*

Cæsare venturo *Cæsar being about to come*, redde *restore thou*,
Phosphore *O morning star*, diem *day.*

Obs. 1. Antonius *Antony*, Cæsare ignaro *Cæsar (being) ignorant*, constitutus est *was appointed* magister equitum *master of the horse.*

Obs. 2. Cæsar, *Cæsar*, victis hostibus *(his) enemies having been conquered*, rediit *returned* Romam *to Rome.*

Antonius *Antony*, repudiata Octavia *Octavia having been divorced*, duxit uxorem *led (to) wife* Cleopatram *Cleopatra.*

CHAPTER III.

p. 129.—§ 57. II. Obs. 2. Camillus *Camillus*, ut *as* reddidit *he restored* oppidum *the town* civibus *to the citizens*, ita *so (he restored)* cives *the citizens* oppido *to the town.*

p. 132.—III. 1. Temporum *classes the classes of tenses* Indicativi *Modi of the indicative mood* seorsim *adhibentur are used separately*: ut *as*—

Quod *that which* erit-que *both shall be*, fuit-que *and has been*, est-que *and is*, patet *lies open (is revealed)* per me *by means of me.*
Musici *musicians* floruerunt *flourished* in Græciâ *in Greece*, omnes-que *and all* discabant *used to learn* id *it.*

Non eris *you will not be* par *equal (to him) (i.e., as big as the ox)*, si *if* ruperis *you shall have burst* te *yourself.*

2. Præsentia Tempora *present tenses* Modi Subjunctivi *of the subjunctive mood* subjiciuntur *are put after* Præsentibus et Futuris Temporibus *present and future tenses*, et *and* Præterita *past (tenses)* Præteritis *after past* : ut *as*—

Namque *for* vates *the prophet* novit *knows* omnia *all things*, quæ *what* sint *are* (pp. 2, 3), quæ *what* fuerint *have been*, quæ *what* trahantur *are being drawn along* ventura *about to come.*

Quisque *each* tendebat *was striving* sibi *for himself*, ut *that* evaderet *he should escape* primus *first* periculo *from the danger.*

Contendam *I will strive* voce *with my voice*, quantum *as much as* potero *I shall be able* (observe the Latin future, where the English would use the present *can*), ut *that* populus Romanus *the Roman people* exaudiat *may entirely hear* hoc *this.*

p. 133.—IV. (1.) Cæsar *Cæsar* communit fortifies castra *(his) camp* quo *(by which)* in order that facilius possit *he may be able* the more easily prohibere *to stop* hostes *the enemies.*

- (2.) *Est there is tantum præsidiî so small (of) a garrison, ut that ne murus quidem not even the wall possit can cingi be surrounded (i.e. manned).*

Casus quidam an accident (p. 41, note) impedit hindered (me) ne facerem that I should not do (it).

Ut, ne, quo adhibita used Finaliter finally vel or Consecutivè consecutively exigunt require Subjunctivum Modum a subjunctive mood: ut as—

Edit he eats, ut in order that vivat he may live.

Egi I did id that (I took care), ne interessem that I should not be present.

V. Adsum I am present (here am I), qui who feci did (it).

p. 134.—Habetis ye have facultatem the opportunity, quam which petistis ye have sought.

Habebis you will have (a man) cui to whom des you may (give) intrust literas (your) letter.

Relativum the relative concordat agrees cum Antecedente with the antecedent genere in gender, numero in number, et and personâ in person; casu autem but in case paret it obeys regulis the rules clausulæ suæ of its own clause: ut as—

Contemnimus we despise hominem the man, qui who amat loves mendacia lies.

Ea amicitia that friendship est is jucundissima most delightful, quam which similitudo morum a similarity of character conjugavit has bound together.

Obs. 2. Homines men tuerentur occupy illum globum that globe quæ which dicitur is called terra the earth.

Obs. 5. Cæsar Caesar præmisit sent forward equitatum the cavalry, qui who viderent might see.

p. 135.—VI. Quid tandem what, I pray, Sextius potest can Sextius facere do in hac re in this matter?

Quæro I enquire, quid tandem whatever Sextius Sextius possit facere can do in hac re in this matter.

Obliqua Interrogatio an indirect question semper præ se gerit always bears before itself (displays) Subjunctivum Modum a subjunctive mood: ut as—

Namque for vates the prophet novit knows omnia all things, quæ what sint are, quæ what fuerint have been, quæ what trahantur are being drawn along ventura about to come.

VII. 1. Plato Plato venit came Tarentum to Tarentum ad Archytam to (the house of) Archytas.

Cicero Cicero scribit writes Platonem that Plato venisse came Tarentum to Tarentum ad Archytam to (the house of) Archytas.

p. 136.—2. Verba verbs sentiendi of feeling et and declarandi of declaring sæpe regunt often govern Clausulam Infinitivam an infinitive clause: ut as—

Animus the mind sentit feels so that it moveri is moved sua vi by its own force, non aliena not (by the force) of others.
Thales Thales dixit said aquam that water esse was initium the source rerum of things.

III. TRANSLATIONS OF ADDITIONAL RULES.

I. ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Verbs of asking, teaching, advising, and certain others, govern both Accusatives, one of the person, but the other of the thing: as—We all ask peace of you. Why now, you donkey, should I teach you letters?

II. DATIVE CASE.

Intransitive Verbs govern a Dative of the remoter object, and especially those by which advantage, submission, care, or kindness, or trust, or command is meant, or whatever is contrary to these; with videor, &c., and those which reading will supply: as—It must be seen (we must see to it), that we use that liberality, which may do good to friends, hurt no one. Yield not thou to ills, but go bolder against them. Fortune resists sluggish prayers. Consult for yourselves, take care for (your) country. I never pleased myself less than yesterday. Collected money commands or serves each. It is fit to obey a parent rather than (to obey) love. True friendship seems to me to be richer and more luxuriant.

Obs. Shrubberies and low tamarisks do not delight all.

2. Many Adjectives and Adverbs govern a Dative of the Remoter Object, by which is meant advantage, likeness, fitness, custom, equality, kindness, easiness, pleasantness, nearness, relationship, or the contrary to these: as—If you cause, that he should be (him to be) serviceable to (his) country, useful to the lands. Be kind to all, flattering to none, intimate with few, fair to everyone (all). No one was more friendly, nor more pleasant, nor dearer to me than Atticus. A crowd troublesome to peace, and hostile to gentle rest.

III. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

As many as teach either knowledge, desire, power, fear, memory, or the contrary to these: as—The mind of men (is) ignorant of fate and future luck. The nature of men is eager for novelty. Powerful over himself (self-controlled). Fearing the Gods. Be mindful of short life. Unmindful of a kindness.

IV. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION &c.

1. Verbs, Adjectives, and Participles, by which origin, or separation, or privation, or want is signified, govern an Ablative: as—The Trojan Cæsar will be born from a fair stock. Cæsar delivered the Ubii from

siege. Sickness was depriving me of sleep. The occasion does not need such aid, nor those defenders of yours.

2. *Worthy, unworthy, endowed, rich, contented, full, relying, free, with Adjectives signifying price, govern an Ablative: as—Worthy of (his) father, grandfather, (and) his ancestors. Gifted with hope. Full of joy. Rich in land, rich in money put out at interest. Go along content with your lot. Go hence, free from all fear. Relying on (his) youth. To be purchased neither with purple, nor gold.*

V. MOODS.

I. 1. All were still, and held intent their faces.

2. He eats that he may live. You know how to conquer, Hannibal: you know not how to use a victory.

II. 1. Night has gone: the sun shines: the stars will soon return.

2. Go, boy. Come hither.

Obs. Go away, swear not: I believe (you) enough.

3. He will hear that the citizens have whetted their steel.

4. Why do you doubt, what you may (to) think about the state? I beseech (you) that you would (to) help me.

A dependent clause, a doubtful thing (indefiniteness), a conception of the mind—these signs are wont to (usually) mark the Conjunctive Mood.

VI. ADJECTIVES.

At the beginning of day, the top of the mountain was held by Labienus. These things Janus teaches from top to bottom (i.e. the Uppermost Janus—the street—from the lowermost). The rest of the crowd. The end of the year. The middle of the city. The remainder of the work. The inside of the house. The rear of a marching army.

Quum causal or concessive (p. 145) governs a Subjunctive: but quum temporal, unless it refers to past things, generally (governs) an Indicative: as—Since you endure alone so many and such great matters. Teucer, although he was flying from Salamis and his father, yet is said to have bound with a poplar crown his temples moist with wine (Bacchus). Alexander, when he had slain Clitus, scarce kept his hands off himself.
2. All of us easily give right advice to the sick, when (we ourselves) are well. When I shall sacrifice (with) a calf instead of fruits, come thyself.

Qui used in Final or Consecutive, or in Causal clauses, governs a Subjunctive: as—Nature gave man reason, that the desires of the soul should be ruled with it. You have one (who may) to sit by you, (and) prepare fomentations. And he accuses himself much, because he has not received willingly the Trojan Æneas, and taken him to his city as his son-in-law.

APPENDIX.

THE CENTRAL MEANINGS OF PREPOSITIONS.

I. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Local.

Metaphorical.

Ad, to, at, near to;

To, at, for.

Ad meridiem, to the south.

Ad necem, to death.

Ad quintum lapidem, at the fifth milestone.

Ad horam destinatam, at the appointed hour.

Ad Cannas, near Cannæ.

Ad salutem, for safety.

Adversum, adversus, towards;

Against.

Adversus Scyllam, towards Scylla.

Adversum leges, against the laws.

Antē, before;

Before (of time).

Ante ostium, before the door.

Ante lucem, before daybreak.

Apud, with, in, or amongst;

Amongst, in (the book of).

Apud me, with me, or at my house.

Apud viros bonos, amongst good men.

Apud Germanos, amongst the Germans.

Apud Platona, in Plato.

Circā, around.

About, almost.

Circa flumina, around the rivers.

Circa rura, about the country.

Circa septuagintu, almost seventy.

Circum, around.

Circum claustra, around the barriers.

Circitēr, around (rare);

About, near.

Circiter horam octavam, about the eighth hour.

<i>Local.</i>	<i>Metaphorical.</i>
<i>Cis</i> , on this side ; <i>Cis Padum</i> , on this side the Po.	Within. <i>Cis paucos menses</i> , within a few months.
<i>Citrā</i> , on this side ; <i>Citra Rhenum</i> , on this side the Rhine.	Within, apart from. <i>Citra tertiam syllabam</i> , short of the third syllable. <i>Citra invidiam</i> , apart from envy.
<i>Cōtrā</i> , opposite to ; <i>Contra Hesperiam</i> , opposite to Italy.	Contrary to, against. <i>Contra naturam</i> , contrary to nature. <i>Contra Romanos</i> , against the Romans.
<i>Ērgā</i> , towards (rare) ;	Towards. <i>Erga nos</i> , towards us.
<i>Ēxtrā</i> , outside of ; <i>Extra portam</i> , outside of the gate.	Beyond, except. <i>Extra modum</i> , beyond (all) bounds. <i>Extra me</i> , except me.
<i>Infra</i> , beneath ; <i>Infra cælum</i> , beneath the sky.	Beneath. <i>Infra se</i> , beneath themselves.
<i>Intēr</i> , between ; <i>Inter fagos</i> , between the beech-trees.	During, among. <i>Inter cœnam</i> , during supper. <i>Inter se</i> , among themselves.
<i>Intrā</i> , within. <i>Intra oppidum</i> , within the town.	Within. <i>Intra decem annos</i> , within ten years.
<i>Jūrta</i> , close to ; <i>Juxta Cappadociam</i> , close to Cappadocia.	Next to, along with. <i>Juxta deos</i> , next to the gods. <i>Juxta conjuges</i> , along with their wives.
<i>Ōb</i> , towards, in front of ; <i>Ob Trojam</i> , towards Troy. <i>Ob oculos</i> , in front of my eyes.	For or because of. <i>Ob eam rem</i> , on that account.
<i>Pēnēs</i> , along with ; <i>Penes me</i> , along with me.	In the power of. <i>Penes Pompeium</i> , in the power of Pompey.
(Penes is sometimes put after its case: as, <i>te penes</i> , in your power.)	

*Local**Për*, through, over;*Per cælum*, through the air.*Per vias*, over the roads.*Põne*, behind;*Pone tergum*, behind the back.*Põst*, behind;*Post tergum*, behind his back.*Præter*, past, before;*Præter castra*, past or before the camp.{ *Prõpě*, near;{ *Prõptěr*, near;*Prope amnem*, near the river.*Propter mare*, near the sea.*Sēcũdũm*, after;*Secundum me*, after me (rare).*Sũprā*, above;*Supra terram*, above the earth.*Trāns*, across.*Trans Padum*, across the Po.*Ūltrā*, beyond;*Ultra montem*, beyond the mountain.*Věrsũs*, towards.*Brundisium versus*, towards Brindisi.*Metaphorical.*

Through, by means of.

Per hiemem, through winter.*Per se*, by means of himself.

After, since.

Post Chloen, after Chloë.*Post Veios captos*, since the capture of Veii.

Beyond, contrary to, besides.

Præter ceteros, beyond others.*Præter spem*, contrary to expectation.*Præter hæc*, besides these (things).

Nigh or near to.

On account of.

Prope lucem, nearly daybreak.*Propter metum*, on account of fear.

After or next to, according to.

Secundum patrem, after or next to my father.*Secundum naturam*, according to nature.

Above or beyond.

Supra vires, beyond his strength.

Beyond or more than.

Ultra modum, beyond bounds.(*Versus* is put after its case.)

II. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

1. Pure Prepositions.

<i>Local.</i>	<i>Metaphorical.</i>
<i>Ā, ab, ābs</i> , off, from, by;	From, by.
<i>Ābsquē</i> ;	Apart from, without.
<i>A portu</i> , from the harbour.	<i>Ab initio</i> , from the beginning.
<i>A latere</i> , by the side.	<i>A Cæsare</i> , by Cæsar.

(*Absque approbatione*, without approval.)

NOTE.—*Ab* is used before a vowel; *a*, before all consonants except *b*; *abs*, mostly in compounds, or before *te*.

Cum (σύν, κύν), together with; Together with, with.

Cum conjugibus et liberis, together with their wives and children. *Cum virtute*, together with virtue.

NOTE.—*Cum* should not be used for *the means*. It comes *after* some Pronouns: as, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum*, *quibuscum*.

<i>Dē</i> , down from; from;	From, concerning, during.
<i>De monte</i> , down from the mountain.	<i>De plebe</i> , from the common people.
<i>De finibus</i> , from the borders.	<i>De virtute</i> , concerning virtue.
	<i>De nocte</i> , during night.
<i>Ē, ex</i> (ἐκ), out of, from;	Out of, after, by reason of.
<i>Ex urbe</i> , out of the city.	<i>Ex vitâ</i> , out of life.
<i>Ex equo</i> , from horseback.	<i>Ex consulatu</i> , after his consulship.
	<i>Ex vulnere</i> , by reason of his wound.

NOTE.—*Ex* is used before both vowels and consonants: *E* is used only occasionally, and before consonants.

<i>Præ</i> , in front of, before;	Before, above.
<i>Præ se</i> , in front of oneself.	<i>Præ ceteris</i> , before or above the rest.
<i>Pro</i> , before, from the front of;	For, instead of, in proportion to.
<i>Pro æde</i> , before the temple.	<i>Pro re-publicâ</i> , for the state.
<i>Pro rostris</i> , from the front of the rostrum.	<i>Pro consule</i> , instead of the consul.

Pro multitudine, in proportion to the number.

*Local.**Metaphorical.**Sinē*, without;

Without.

Sinē pennis, without wings.*Sine spe*, without hope.

2. Adverbs used as Prepositions.

Clām;

Without the knowledge of.

Clam patre, without the knowledge of his father.*Cōrām*, in the presence of.*Coram populo*, in the people's presence.*Pālām*, in the presence of.*Palam te*, before you.*Prōcūl*, far from;

Far from.

Procul urbe, far from the city.*Procul negotiis*, far from business.*Tēnūs*, up to, as far as.*Pube tenus*, up to the groin.

III. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

Four Prepositions, *In*, *sūb*, *sūbtēr*, and *sūpēr*, govern both an Accusative and an Ablative,—an Accusative, when *motion towards* is signified, and an Ablative, when *position* is implied.

In—1. Into, towards.

Towards, against.

as, (*Ire*) *in urbem*, (to go) into the city.*In noctem*, towards night.*In septentriones*, towards the north.*In deos*, towards the gods.*In Verrem*, against Verres.

2. In.

In.

as, *In castris*, in the camp.*In adolescentiā*, in youth.(*Esse*) *in urbe*, (to be) in the city.*In ære alieno*, in debt.*Sub*—1. Under, near to.

Towards, to.

as, (*Ire*) *sub umbram*, (to go) under the shade.*Sub noctem*, towards night.(*Ire*) *sub montem*, (to go) near the mountain.*Sub manus*, to hand.

2. Under, at the foot of.

Under, during.

as, (*Esse*) *sub divo*, (to be) under the open air.*Sub signis*, under the standards.(*Esse*) *sub mœnibus*, (to be) at the foot of the walls.*Sub luce*, during light.

Sūbtēr, 1. Beneath.

as, (*Ire*) *subter pineta*, (to go) beneath the pinewood.

2. Beneath.

as, (*Esse*) *subter litore*, (to be) beneath the shore.

Super, 1. Over, upon;

Beyond.

as, *Super vallum*, over a wall. *Super omnia*, beyond all things.

2. Upon.

Concerning.

as, *Super foco*, upon the hearth. *Super Priamo*, concerning Priam.

Obs. 1. *Tenus* also governs a genitive, and is set after its case: as, *aurium tenus*, up to the ears. *Versus* is set after its case; as *Brundisium versus*, towards Brindisi.

Obs. 2. All prepositions of two syllables, except *absque*, *apud*, *erga*, *penes*, and *sine*, are also used as adverbs: as, *ante*, *circum*, *contra*, &c.

LONDON

PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.

NEW-STREET SQUARE

MILLER'S ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.

Recently published, in 12mo. price 5s. cloth,

AN ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY THE

REV. EDWARD MILLER, M.A.

LATE FELLOW AND TUTOR OF NEW COLLEGE, OXFORD.

OPINIONS of the PRESS.

THIS is just the kind of Latin grammar one looks into with pleasure—everything well arranged, and in its proper place—old friends—moods and tenses, and syntactical rules—all recognised in a moment. The explanations are full without being wearisome. The Author has wisely divided his syntax into several parts, forming so many grades in the course of instruction, and added a treatise on prosody, which contains all that ordinary students require to know. On the whole, both in the matter and style of printing, we have seldom come across a Latin grammar which has pleased us more.' LONDON REVIEW.

THE multitude of grammars, both of ancient and modern languages, is so great as to render it a difficulty to choose between them. Of this one, we can only say that it is a comprehensive and useful work by a sound scholar and experienced teacher. It is also an endeavour to combine the various excellences of the chief Latin grammars of old times with the more philosophical and universal treatment of philology which modern scientific grammarians have made public. It appears to be one great merit of this book, that it is chiefly written in English, an arrangement which learners will appreciate, and which will render it more extensively useful. The rules of Syntax, however, and other portions to be committed to memory are in Latin, the rules being explained in English; and those little hints respecting peculiar usages which might be misunderstood or passed over by learners, if given by Latin, are also clearly and briefly set forth in English. The amount of well-arranged information which this grammar contains is immense; in some parts, indeed, it seems to be somewhat redundant, and to go beyond the needs of boys and others seeking to master the rudiments of the language. The Author, however, declares his intention, if this grammar is received with favour, of publishing another in an abridged form, especially for the use of beginners. If this were done, much that is of comparatively little use to those who are beginning the study of Latin would be omitted, thus giving more prominence to the fundamental parts, while the complete work would be made more welcome hereafter to those who had previously used the abridgment.'

ENGLISH CHURCHMAN.

'MILLER'S Latin Grammar combines the useful form of the Eton with the extensive result of Zumpt and Madvig. It is unquestionably the best school grammar we have seen.'

JOHN BULL.

'THE Author has greatly improved on the labour of his predecessors. He has made the declensions and cases of substantives more intelligible, has simplified the conjugations, moods, and tenses of verbs, and facilitated correct composition.'

MORNING POST.

'THE construction of sentences is Mr. Miller's strong point. . . . We welcome Mr. Miller's grammar as a great improvement on all that have preceded it. It will be found extremely useful to all who are engaged in teaching, either to boys at school or men at college, the Latin language and the difficult art of Latin composition. And we are disposed to anticipate a still more favourable estimate of his projected smaller grammar. We shall be surprised if it does not find its way into extensive use in our public schools. The bulk and cost of the present work are too great to allow any sanguine expectation of its at once supplanting works that are both cheaper and shorter, but we venture to express an opinion that no one engaged in tuition ought to be without it. The Appendix, too, contains a great deal of useful information, such as many teachers will be glad to have at hand.'

SATURDAY REVIEW.

'THE chief features of the grammar before us are as follows :—

'(1) It is chiefly in English, those parts alone being in Latin which the pupil must know by heart.

'(2) The genders of nouns are given under each declension, and for an elementary grammar the treatment of pronouns is very full and complete.

'(3) The conjunctive mood is confined to its own proper four tenses, and its difficulties are fully dealt with.

'(4) The nature of particles in Latin—the delicate use of which in composition is the certain test of a good Latin scholar—is fully and amply treated of.

'(5) The principles of crude forms are explained in the Appendix, as the Author has found the system itself "too abstract and philosophic for the powers of most English boys."

'(6) The syntax—which occupies a very considerable space in these pages—contains all the *recognised* discoveries from Madvig, Zumpt, Donaldson, and other English and continental scholars.

'(7) An excellent treatise on metres is added, and the indices are very copious. . . .

Our own examination of this work has satisfied us that it is in many respects an excellent introduction to the Latin tongue, full of that freshness and vigour which may be expected when a competent scholar devotes himself to a laborious and careful elaboration of the principles and niceties of the language of Cicero and Virgil, and does not hesitate to turn aside from the beaten track when his guides are in error.'

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

London: LONGMAN, GREEN, and CO. Paternoster Row.

